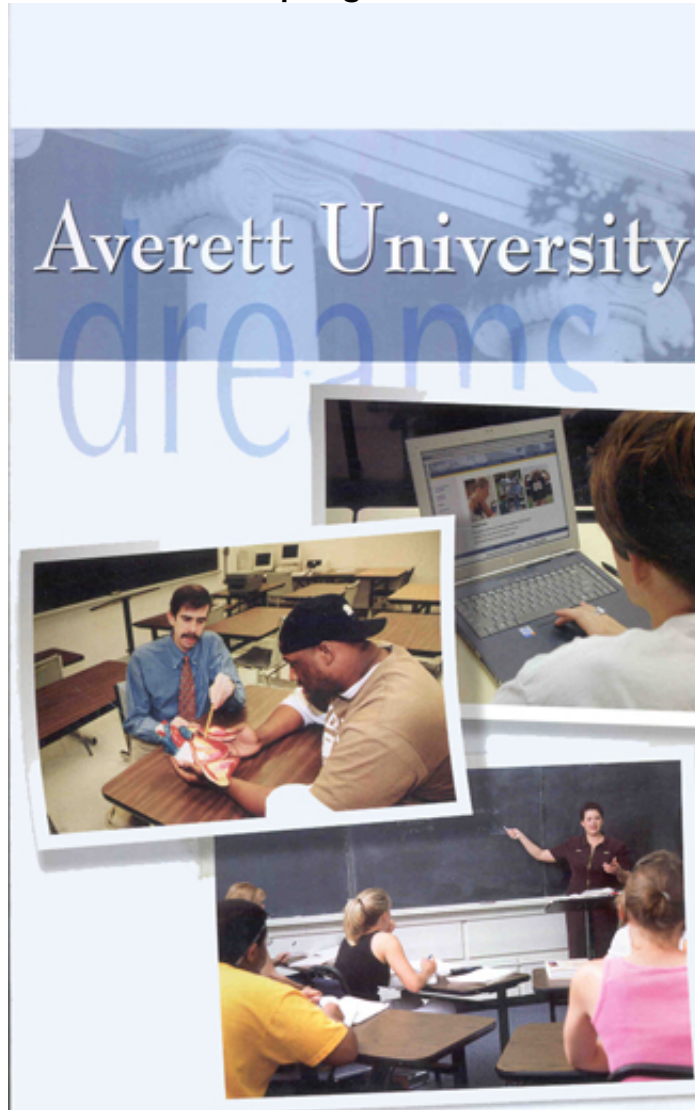


Averett University

Undergraduate Catalog Spring 2006

- [Introducing Averett](#)
- [Admissions](#)
- [Academic Programs](#)
- [Degree Programs](#)
- [Student Life](#)
- [Financial Information](#)
- [Directory of Personnel](#)
- [College Calendar](#)
- [Catalog Index](#)



Averett University

Introducing Averett

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> General Information](#)

[> **The University Mission**](#)

[> From the President](#)

[> Accreditation and Memberships](#)

[> History](#)

[> Averett University and Danville, Virginia](#)

[> Campus](#)

INTRODUCING AVERETT

The University Mission

Averett University is a private, co-educational institution affiliated with the Baptist General Association of Virginia. Averett University takes seriously its Christian heritage and values and its commitment to intellectual inquiry and excellence in all aspects of college life. Averett offers undergraduate curricula blending the liberal arts and sciences with professional preparation, as well as graduate programs in education and business. In all its programs Averett stresses individual attention to student needs and learning, in an atmosphere where both academic and religious freedom are valued. The university provides an environment promoting collaboration, innovation, and collegiality among faculty, staff and students. Averett is a community that values cultural, individual, and racial diversity.



Averett graduates will communicate clearly, think critically, and function effectively in today's rapidly changing, globally-oriented information age. Averett also recognizes its unique responsibilities to the Danville region, promoting higher education, providing cultural opportunities, and serving as a resource for the community.

Averett University

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

> **General Information**
> The University Mission
> From the President

> Accreditation and
Memberships
> History

> Averett University and
Danville, Virginia
> Campus

INTRODUCING AVERETT

General Information

The University welcomes visitors to the campus throughout the year. The administrative offices are open from 8:30 a.m. to 4:30 p.m., Monday through Friday. Appointments for all interviews should be made in advance, if possible. Telephone (434) 791-5600 or toll free 1-800-AVERETT (283-7388). Or contact us at www.averett.edu.

Averett University does not discriminate on the basis of race, color, creed, age, gender, national origin or disability in the administration of any of its educational programs, activities, admissions or employment practices.

Averett reserves the right to change courses, requirements, and regulations in this catalog without advance notice. Failure to read this catalog does not excuse students from the requirements and regulations described herein.

A printed catalog may contain some information that may be "out of date" by the time it reaches publication, and changes in policies and curriculum occur constantly. On the other hand, electronic documents may be revised continuously. Therefore, the official version of Averett's academic catalog will be the online version as found at www.averett.edu/catalog.

Formal complaints may be directed to the Vice President for Administration and Finance.

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> General Information](#)
[> The University Mission](#)
[> **From the President**](#)

[> Accreditation and Memberships](#)
[> History](#)

[> Averett University and Danville, Virginia](#)
[> Campus](#)

INTRODUCING AVERETT

From the President

This Averett University undergraduate catalog for 2004-2006 brings together many kinds of useful information. Most important are the academic rules and regulations - what students do in order to earn their degrees. In addition to descriptions of courses and requirements for each major, there is a full explanation of the goals of general education, the academic core of the undergraduate experience.

The catalog also includes Averett's mission, a short introduction to the University, and information about admission, student life, finances and financial aid, a map, and an academic calendar.

Although the catalog states many rules, what makes our community is not rules but people. Central to our purpose are the people in the faculty who teach, advise, and inspire. They are listed in the catalog, and as you can see from the summaries of their degrees they have prepared through study at fine colleges and universities. They bring their special gifts to their work with students, which is why a degree from Averett is so worthwhile.

Use the catalog to understand why we do what we do, refer to it often, and if there's anything you don't understand, just ask!

Richard A. Pfau
President

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> General Information](#)
[> The University Mission](#)
[> From the President](#)

[> **Accreditation and Memberships**](#)
[> History](#)

[> Averett University and Danville, Virginia](#)
[> Campus](#)

INTRODUCING AVERETT

Accreditation and Memberships

Averett University is accredited by the Commission on Colleges of the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools (1866 Southern Lane, Decatur, GA, 30033-4097, telephone 404-679-4501) to award associate, baccalaureate and master's degrees. The teacher preparation program is approved by the Department of Education, Commonwealth of Virginia. The University is approved for payment for veterans.

Averett University's memberships include:

- American Council on Education
- Association of Virginia Colleges
- Council of Independent Colleges
- Virginia Humanities Conference
- Association of Southern Baptist Colleges and Schools

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> General Information](#)
[> The University Mission](#)
[> From the President](#)

[> Accreditation and Memberships](#)
[> **History**](#)

[> Averett University and Danville, Virginia](#)
[> Campus](#)

INTRODUCING AVERETT

History

Averett was chartered in 1859 under the name of Union Female College. For almost one hundred and fifty years it has operated continuously, though undergoing several name changes. In 1910 the College became affiliated with the Baptist General Association of Virginia. The name Averett was given to the College by the Board of Trustees in 1917. It was also in 1917 that the College received, from the Virginia State Board of Education, its first accreditation as a junior college. The College was accredited by the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools in 1928 and by the Board of Regents of the University of the State of New York in 1932. In the fall of 1969, Averett undertook a major reorientation of its program by adding a four-year baccalaureate degree program and making the College co-educational. Since that time, Averett has experienced unusual growth and is emerging as one of the outstanding private senior colleges in Virginia. Upon the graduation of its first baccalaureate class in spring, 1971, Averett received senior college approval from the State Council of Higher Education for Virginia and accreditation by the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools. In 1978 the College began offering courses leading to the Master of Education degree. Accreditation at the master's level was received in 1981. In the fall of 1983 the College began offering courses leading to the Master of Business Administration degree. The program was approved by the State Council of Higher Education of Virginia in the spring of 1984 and received accreditation from the Commission on Colleges of the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools in 1986.

On July 1, 2001, Averett College officially became Averett University, entering another chapter in the institution's history. In adopting the name, Averett University, the Board of Trustees affirmed Averett's position as an innovative, small, private university that gives students the individual attention traditionally associated with small liberal arts colleges along with the advantages found at comprehensive universities. Averett will remain true to its heritage as an institution where teaching and learning come first. Averett will continue to stress individual attention to student needs and learning, in an atmosphere where both academic and religious freedom are valued.

Recognizing its heritage as a liberal arts institution, Averett University continues to place primary emphasis on undergraduate curricula blending the liberal arts and sciences with professional preparation and graduate study. Averett University will retain the qualities that have long been the hallmark of an Averett education, while providing an undergraduate- and graduate-level curriculum that defines us as a comprehensive university.

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> General Information](#)
[> The University Mission](#)
[> From the President](#)

[> Accreditation and Memberships](#)
[> History](#)

[> Averett University and Danville, Virginia](#)
[> Campus](#)

INTRODUCING AVERETT

Averett University and Danville, Virginia.

Averett University is located in a residential neighborhood adjacent to Danville's famed Millionaires Row, a collection of vast Victorian homes recognized by historians for their architectural splendor. Ballou Park, a 107-acre park and shopping center, is located within easy walking distance from the university. Averett is also located within walking distance of a variety of churches, several restaurants and a movie theatre.

Piedmont Mall, other shopping outlets and a selection of chain and family-owned restaurants are just a short drive across the Dan River. Dan River Mills Factory Outlet store is located near the university. Averett is also conveniently located down the street from Danville Memorial Hospital and other medical service providers.

In addition to the tennis courts, playing fields, fitness center and basketball courts available at Averett, the city offers recreational facilities, including the 150-acre Dan Daniel Park, home of the Danville Braves, Atlanta's Rookie Class minor league baseball team. Dan Daniel Park features trails for hiking and biking. Averett is within walking distance of both a YWCA and YMCA, which offer swimming, racquetball and other fitness activities. The city also maintains a popular 3.2-mile paved river walk along the Dan River.

The university sponsors an annual Concert-Lecture Series that brings musical groups, lectures and plays to Danville. The Averett Singers, Averett Players and Averett's art students also provide a schedule of plays, concerts and exhibits during the academic year. The Danville Concert Association, Danville Arts and Humanities, the Little Theatre of Danville and other community groups regularly bring high-quality performances to the area. Danville's Carrington Pavilion, an outdoor amphitheater, is also available for concerts and special events.

The city offers three local museums including The Museum of Fine Arts and History, which is within walking distance of the university. The Fine Arts Museum houses art galleries, studio space and an auditorium used by local repertory groups. The Danville Science Center, a satellite of the Science Museum of Virginia, offers hands-on exhibits and, during the summer, its popular butterfly station.

Quick Facts

- Danville enjoys four distinct seasons with an average annual temperature of 58.1 ° F.
- The city's population is approximately 48,400
- Danville's heritage is based on tobacco and textiles. It is the headquarters of Dan River, Inc.
- The city has been chosen to be among the first cities to be wired with the next generation of high-speed Internet.
- Danville is just three miles from the Virginia-North Carolina border and is convenient to airports in both states.

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> General Information](#)
[> The University Mission](#)
[> From the President](#)

[> Accreditation and Memberships](#)
[> History](#)

[> Averett University and Danville, Virginia](#)
[> **Campus**](#)

INTRODUCING AVERETT

Campus

The main campus of Averett is situated on approximately 19 acres in a beautiful residential section of the city of Danville. Rolling piedmont hills, with the Blue Ridge Mountains in the distance, provide an appealing view from the buildings.

Four of the major living and instructional facilities are located in connected buildings. These buildings contain residence hall rooms, classrooms, laboratories, lounge areas, dining hall, kitchen, and administrative offices.

Main Hall, constructed in 1910, was the first building on the present site of the University. It has undergone many renovations and additions. Currently this five-story building contains administrative offices, reception rooms, the University bookstore, student laundry facilities, campus post office, the Computer Center, a computer lab, faculty offices, and residence hall space for men and women. Street level entrance and an elevator make this building accessible to persons with disabilities. **Davenport Hall** houses three floors of residence halls, a central lounge area, a small, multimedia auditorium, Student Development Offices, and on the ground floor, a painting studio for the Art Department. The ground floor and first floor halls are accessible to persons with disabilities. **Danville Hall** contains residence halls on the top two floors. Classrooms, facilities for the student publications, and the Security Office are located on the second floor. Two of the classrooms have wireless computer capabilities. The first and second floors have outside entrances which are accessible to those with disabilities. **Bishop Hall** is the newest building in this four-facility complex. The first floor houses four classrooms, the student counseling office, and the Learning Center. The dining hall and kitchen are on the second floor. Both of these floors have ground-level entrances. The third floor contains meeting rooms and the fourth floor is an air-conditioned residence hall.

Averett Commons is our student apartment complex providing 140 private student bedrooms. Each apartment contains a furnished central living area, a full-service kitchen, a washer/dryer, and two bathrooms. This new complex is intended for upperclass students and contains accessible apartments on the first floor for those with disabilities.

The **Gymnasium** and **Pritchett Auditorium** are located immediately north of Bishop Hall. The **Gymnasium** is used for classes, intramurals and open recreation. **Pritchett Auditorium** is located above the gymnasium and has its entrance from Mt. View Avenue. It is the home of the Averett Players and is a site for cultural offerings of the Concert/Lecture series.

Frith Hall, completed in 1985, houses the science and psychology laboratories and most of the classrooms for the University. A large number of faculty have offices in this building. The David S. Blount Chapel, completed in 1996, is located on the second level. Street access is available on three levels and an elevator makes all floors accessible to persons with disabilities.

Alumni Hall was originally constructed as the house for the University president. Since 1984 it has housed the staff of Institutional Advancement, including alumni relations and public relations.

The **Emily Swain Grousbeck Music Center** is the newest academic building on campus. It houses the Music Department, practice rooms, music library, and media center, as well as classrooms and a recital hall.

Fugate Hall is a residence facility with a capacity for housing 150 students. There are fifteen suites, each containing a central living area, storage closets, a large bath and five bedrooms. This building has central air conditioning and one floor is easily accessible for persons with disabilities.

The **Fine Arts Building** is located on West Main Street. It was formerly a private residence which has been converted for use by the Art Department. Nearby is the **Carriage House**, another building used by the Art Department for sculpture and ceramics instruction.

The **W. C. English Hall** is another private residence on West Main Street which has been converted to University use. It houses the offices of the Admissions staff of the University.

The **Financial Aid Office** is located in a former private residence on Robertson Avenue. It houses the offices of the Dean of Financial Assistance and the Financial Aid staff.

The **Student Center** is located on Woodland Drive in a former private residence which was converted for university use in 1995. It houses the office of the Campus Minister. The Center includes a game room in the basement, and the Cougar's Den, a snack shop and informal meeting place.

The **Mary B. Blount Library** supports the university curriculum and research and reading interests of students and faculty with scholarly and professional sources, space for individual and group study, access technologies, and instruction by library faculty. The library is located at 344 West Main Street, near the Main Hall, and next to Averett University Admissions Office. The library building is open seven days a week during the fall and spring semesters. During summer sessions and semester breaks it is open every day except Saturday. Averett students can access the [library's electronic resources](#) at any time, from any location on the Internet.

The library offers 128,000 print and electronic books and media, 886 print and electronic journals, 76 subscription databases, Internet access, group study areas, a quiet area for individual study, Interlibrary Loan services, a computer classroom and open lab, and digital media production equipment.

Students can request library reference services using a toll free telephone number (800-543-9440), local number (791-5692), e-mail (AClib@averett.edu), FAX number (434-791-5637), "[Ask a Librarian](#)" web form, or in person at the Reference Desk. Librarians offer library orientation and research classes throughout the year.

Library faculty encourage students to develop information literacy skills: the ability to define and articulate a problem, locate reliable sources of information, retrieve, evaluate and understand this literature, and use the knowledge gained to communicate effectively.

The offices for administration and the Southern Virginia Region of **GPS** (Graduate and Professional Studies), Averett's adult degree program, are located in former residences on Woodland Drive and Robertson Avenue. The GPS Program also has locations in Richmond, VA (Central Region), Virginia Beach, VA (Tidewater Region), and Vienna, VA (Greater Washington Region).

The Danville Regional Airport houses the facility which Averett leases for the **Aeronautics Program**. The building includes 3,127 square feet of space which is used for all instruction related to supplemental ground instruction, operation manager's office, aircraft maintenance technician's office, and simulator room.

The **Averett University Equestrian Center**, located on 100 acres close to Pelham, North Carolina, is about 15 minutes driving time from the West Main campus. Facilities include a 46,000 square foot building which houses an indoor ring, eighteen stalls and a tack room. The lower stable building houses twenty-two stalls which have removable partitions, two tack rooms, student lounge, office, wash stall for horses and equipment, restroom, and a small laundry area. Outdoor facilities include paddocks and pastures, as well as three training areas: a round pen twenty-five meters in diameter, a dressage ring, and a jumping ring.

North Campus, located on approximately seventy acres at 707 Mount Cross Road in Danville, is about ten minutes driving time from the West Main campus. Located on this property is the **E. Stuart Grant Athletic and Convocation Center**, which houses offices for the Athletic Department staff, the faculty in the Physical Education Department, training room, locker rooms and gymnasium. This facility will seat approximately 3,000. Also located on **North Campus** are playing fields for the intercollegiate athletic teams.

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

Admissions

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> **Beginning Freshmen**

> [Accelerated Admission](#)

> [International Students](#)

> [Transfer Student Admission](#)

> [Special Students](#)

> [Readmission](#)

> [Resident & Commuter Policy](#)

> [Other Admissions](#)

> [Campus Visits](#)

> [Admission Requirements](#)

ADMISSIONS

Beginning Freshmen

The Admissions Committee attempts to select for enrollment those applicants considered best able to benefit from a college education at Averett. In making its decisions, the Admissions Committee considers many factors:



- Graduation from a secondary school or its equivalent.
- Grades from the applicant's secondary school.
- Results of the College Entrance Examination Board Scholastic Aptitude Test (SAT) and/or the American College Test Assessment (ACT).
- Curriculum taken in the secondary school as it relates to the applicant's educational and career objectives.
- Evidence of the ability of the applicant to do college-level work.
- Involvement by the applicant in extracurricular activities.

Factors that are not considered include race, religion, sex, age, handicap, and national or ethnic origin.

Applicants should provide the Admissions Office with:

1. A completed Application for Admission Form, which may be found at our website: www.averett.edu. Applications for Fall entrance are accepted on a rolling basis but should be filed by May 1. Applications received after May 1 will be reviewed on a space available basis.
2. An Application Fee in the amount of \$35 for international applicants only. (The fee is not refundable, and is not applied to any subsequent charge by the University.)
3. A Transcript of credits completed, or in progress, from high school and any college attended.

All entering students should have completed satisfactorily fifteen academic units in a secondary school including at least four units of English, five units of mathematics and sciences (including Algebra I, Algebra II, Geometry and two lab sciences, **or**, Algebra I, Algebra II or Geometry, and three lab sciences) and three units of history and social sciences.

4. SAT I scores (Averett's code is 5017) or ACT scores (Averett's code is 4338) sent to the Averett University Admissions Office.
5. Before a student enrolls, a Student Health History form, provided by the Dean of Student Development, must be completed and returned to Averett.

A. Notification of Acceptance

Averett operates on the "rolling admissions" system; therefore, when all the necessary supporting documents arrive at the University, the Admissions Committee will review the application and promptly inform the applicant of the action taken. Upon receipt of a favorable decision, the applicant should promptly remit a \$250 fee to confirm enrollment and to assure reservation in the residence halls. The reservation fee for commuting students is \$50. International students should confirm their enrollment with a \$4,000 deposit for fall 2004 (\$6,000 beginning spring 2005). This fee is refundable until May 1 (for fall entrance). After this date, this fee is refundable only if the student is unable to enter the University because of extenuating circumstances beyond his or her control. An enrollment deposit will remain active if it is applied to a subsequent term within one year from the initial term of application.

B. Reactivating Admissions Applications

The University retains admissions files for two years. An applicant who did not attend the University after having been accepted may reactivate the request for admission by providing the Admissions Office with a statement of the intent to reapply and with an official transcript of any college-level work undertaken since the original application.

C. Advanced Placement

Advanced placement and academic credit toward a degree may be granted to the student who receives a grade of three, four, or five on the Advanced Placement Examinations of the College Entrance Examination Board. Credit is awarded only in those areas applicable to the Averett curriculum. Information about these examinations can be obtained from the College Board Advanced Placement Examination, Post Office Box 977, Princeton, New Jersey 08540 or www.ets.org.

D. College Placement Tests for New Students

1. English and Mathematics

All students entering Averett for the first time must take English and mathematics placement tests in those subjects to ensure placement in the proper courses. These tests are administered during freshman orientation, and scores are provided to advisors prior to registration for classes.

2. Foreign Language

All students with two or more years of high school credit in French or Spanish must take a placement test in the respective foreign language. These tests are administered during freshman orientation, and scores are provided to advisors prior to registration for classes.

3. Music

All students seeking admission into the music major are required to audition. A good time to schedule an audition is during fall or spring open house. These auditions can be arranged directly with the Chair of the music department.

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Beginning Freshmen](#)

[> **Accelerated Admission**](#)

[> International Students](#)

[> Transfer Student Admission](#)

[> Special Students](#)

[> Readmission](#)

[> Resident & Commuter Policy](#)

[> Other Admissions](#)

[> Campus Visits](#)

[> Admission Requirements](#)

ADMISSIONS

Accelerated Admission and Dual Enrollment

Accelerated Admission may be granted to qualified high school seniors who wish to complete their secondary school graduation requirements at Averett. **Dual Enrollment** permits students to attend courses at Averett for postsecondary credit while still enrolled at the high school. Both options are excellent ways for academically and socially advanced high school students to expand their educational opportunities. Interested students should follow the normal procedure for applying to the University. Applicants will be evaluated for admission using the following criteria.

1. The student must have the written approval from the high school principal to pursue Accelerated Admission or Dual Enrollment.
2. The student must have a minimum grade point average of 3.0 on a 4.0 scale and rank in the top 50% of the class. Accelerated Admission students must also score at least a combined total of 920 on the SAT or 19 on the ACT.
3. The course(s) attempted must be for college degree credits.
4. The student should demonstrate, through a personal interview, the level of personal maturity necessary to meet the demands of college.

Students applying for Accelerated Admission (not Dual Enrollment) should be able to satisfy the high school graduation requirements at the end of one semester at Averett.

It is the responsibility of the student to request that an official Averett transcript be sent to the high school after the completion of courses attempted.

Accelerated Admission students are not eligible for state or federal financial aid until they have completed their requirements for high school graduation. The high school must issue an official transcript or letter indicating that the graduation requirements have been fulfilled.

Averett scholarships are available to academically qualified students.

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Beginning Freshmen](#)

[> Accelerated Admission](#)

[> **International Students**](#)

[> Transfer Student Admission](#)

[> Special Students](#)

[> Readmission](#)

[> Resident & Commuter Policy](#)

[> Other Admissions](#)

[> Campus Visits](#)

[> Admission Requirements](#)

ADMISSIONS

International Students

International students must submit an international application and all required educational documents and test scores to the Admissions Office before an admissions decision can be made. These educational documents include certified English translations of both secondary school transcripts and official transcripts of any college-level work, and acceptable TOEFL (Test of English as a Foreign Language) or SAT scores. The applicant is responsible for having the transcripts evaluated and translated into English and for all costs and fees associated with the service.

Agencies that provide those services are:

World Education Services, Inc.
P.O. Box 5087
Bowling Green Station
New York, NY 10274-5087
(212) 966-6311

Credentials Evaluation Service, Inc.
P.O. Box 66940
Los Angeles, CA 90066

Globe Language Services
Evaluation Service
319 Broadway
New York, NY 10007
(212) 227-1994

World Educational Credentials Evaluators College
Planning
P.O. Box 726
Herndon, VA 22070
(703) 689-0894

Josef Silny & Associates, Inc.
7101 SW 102 Avenue
Miami, FL 33173
(305) 273-1616

Global Credential Evaluators, Inc.
P.O. Box 36
28 Westhampton Way
Richmond, VA 23173-0036
(804) 639-3660

After acceptance, a deposit of \$4,000 for fall 2004 (\$6,000 beginning spring 2005) and a completed Certification of Finances form are required before an I-20 (student visa) can be issued. All payments must be made in US dollars.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Beginning Freshmen](#)
[> Accelerated Admission](#)
[> International Students](#)

[> **Transfer Student Admission**](#)
[> Special Students](#)
[> Readmission](#)

[> Resident & Commuter Policy](#)
[> Other Admissions](#)
[> Campus Visits](#)
[> Admission Requirements](#)

ADMISSIONS

Transfer Student Admission

It is the responsibility of the student who wishes to transfer to Averett from another college to have a high school transcript and official transcripts of **all** previous college work sent to the Averett University Admissions Office. In order to receive transfer credit for courses completed before matriculating to Averett, a final official transcript should be received by the end of the first semester of enrollment at Averett. Transfer students must submit a completed **Dean of Students Form** provided by the Admissions Office. To be admitted to Averett, transfer students should have a minimum transfer GPA of 2.00 (out of a possible 4.00) and be in good academic and social standing at their previous institution.

A. Placement Tests for Transfer Students

Students who transfer from another college must take the placement tests in English and mathematics. The placement tests are administered during orientation. Information about these placement tests is available from the Dean of Arts and Sciences. **Averett does not accept a grade of D in ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research, or ENG 112, Introduction to Literature, or their equivalents. Any student who holds an associate's degree with a D in College Composition I and/or II (ENG 111, 112 or their equivalents) must take ENG 111 and/or 112 at Averett.**

Any transfer student who plans to continue or pursue foreign language study at Averett should sit for the French or Spanish placement exam or see the department chair.

B. Transfer Credit

Averett will transfer courses from regionally accredited institutions of higher education for which a grade of C or higher was received, provided such courses are applicable to the student's degree program at Averett. For those students who have received an associate's degree, Averett will accept in transfer all courses which were credited by the transferring institution toward the student's degree.

The one exception to that policy is that Averett does not transfer grades of D in College Composition I or II (or their equivalents). Any student who holds an associate's degree with a D in College Composition I and/or II (or their equivalents) must take ENG 111 and/or ENG 112 at Averett.

An official evaluation of transfer credit will be sent by the Registrar's Office after notification of acceptance.

Because institutions differ in the minimum scores required for awarding credit, Averett does not normally transfer credits for Advanced Placement, CLEP and similar nationally normed tests. The student must have an official copy of the test scores sent to Averett.

Credits are not normally transferred from proprietary schools or from non-accredited colleges. A student may use the challenge examination or develop a portfolio demonstrating prior learning to receive credit or waiver of specific courses. A department may recommend the waiver of a required course on the basis of course work which is not fully transferable.

Averett University will accept transfer credit earned while a student is on suspension from another institution based on the policy of the suspending institution.

C. International Baccalaureate Diploma

Averett University will grant advanced standing and/or credit for International Baccalaureate higher level examinations with scores of 5, 6 or 7. Credit is offered on an individual course-by-course basis. Students may receive as many as 30 semester hours of credit for the awarding of the diploma. Subsidiary-level courses will be reviewed on a case-by-case basis for possible advanced standing recognition.

D. Senior College Credit

A student who plans to graduate from Averett must complete a minimum of 60 semester hours at a senior college; the last 33 semester hours of work must be completed at Averett. No work will be transferred to Averett from another college until the student has been granted regular admission to Averett.

E. Direct Transfer Agreement

Direct transfer, or articulation, agreements have been arranged with several two-year colleges. Such agreements follow careful comparisons of the curricula at Averett and at the two-year institution. Transfer students who have completed an associate's degree program covered under the agreement will be admitted as juniors and will have all course work which was credited toward the associate's degree transferred to Averett University.

The one exception to that policy is that Averett does not transfer grades of D in College Composition I or II (or their equivalents). Any student who holds an associate's degree with a grade of D in College Composition I and/or II (or their equivalents) must take ENG 111 and/or ENG 112 at Averett.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Beginning Freshmen](#)
[> Accelerated Admission](#)
[> International Students](#)

[> Transfer Student Admission](#)
[> **Special Students**](#)
[> Readmission](#)

[> Resident & Commuter Policy](#)
[> Other Admissions](#)
[> Campus Visits](#)
[> Admission Requirements](#)

ADMISSIONS

Special Students

A **Special Student** is, by definition, a non-degree seeking student. To apply for Special Student status, the student must submit a final high school transcript (this applies to those currently enrolled in high school, high school graduates, or those holding the GED certificate) and/or official transcripts from any postsecondary institutions attended. The special student application should be received by the Admissions Office at least two weeks prior to the beginning of the term in which a student plans to enroll. Once approved, the student may continue to study as a special student at Averett in subsequent **consecutive** terms. If the student elects to stay out for one or more regular terms (fall or spring semester), then he/she must reapply for readmission as a special student. A special student may take day or evening classes and may be part-time or full-time. Special students are not eligible to receive financial aid.

To be admitted as a degree-seeking student, a special student must file an application for admission with the Admissions Office and satisfy regular entrance requirements. To graduate, a minimum of 33 hours must be earned at Averett after a student has obtained degree-seeking status.

A student who has been suspended or dismissed from another college is ineligible to enroll at Averett under Special Student status. Admission will be considered only when the current or former institution has given its permission in writing that the student is eligible to return to that school. Students who enroll at Averett while on academic suspension/dismissal from another institution will, upon discovery, forfeit their registration.

The Admissions Committee may recommend that students first apply as Special students in order to demonstrate their ability to succeed in college work. Such students are allowed to take 3-6 hours of coursework per semester. The GPA they earn will then be viewed as part of their application for degree-seeking status; should they be admitted to degree-seeking status, their GPA and credits earned will count towards graduation.

Special students enrolled full-time are eligible to live on campus. Any exceptions or appeals to this policy must be presented to the Vice President for Enrollment Management and the Assistant Dean of Student Retention.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Beginning Freshmen](#)
[> Accelerated Admission](#)
[> International Students](#)

[> Transfer Student Admission](#)
[> Special Students](#)
[> **Readmission**](#)

[> Resident & Commuter Policy](#)
[> Other Admissions](#)
[> Campus Visits](#)
[> Admission Requirements](#)

ADMISSIONS

Readmission

Any student who:

1. has attended Averett as a degree-seeking student and
2. has withdrawn
been granted a leave of absence or
not returned for the next regular semester
3. and would like to be readmitted to Averett

MUST complete an application for readmission through the Registrar's Office.

A student who attends another college and then seeks readmission to Averett must reapply through the Registrar's Office. An official record of all college-level work taken since leaving Averett should accompany this request for readmission. Students who were in good standing when they left Averett are subject to the same admissions criteria as transfer students.

A student seeking readmission after being on academic or social suspension for one semester must submit a written request for readmission to the Academic Policies Council. The letter should be sent to the Dean of Arts and Sciences at least six weeks prior to the beginning of the term for which the student is seeking readmission.

A student who has been placed on academic suspension and who is readmitted is readmitted under conditions of extended probation. Also, any student who was on academic warning or probation at the time of withdrawal from the University and who is subsequently readmitted will be readmitted with the same status which was in effect at the time of withdrawal.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Beginning Freshmen](#)
 > [Accelerated Admission](#)
 > [International Students](#)

> [Transfer Student Admission](#)
 > [Special Students](#)
 > [Readmission](#)

> **[Resident & Commuter Policy](#)**
 > [Other Admissions](#)
 > [Campus Visits](#)
 > [Admission Requirements](#)

ADMISSIONS

Resident and Commuter Policy

The determination of **resident** or **commuter** status for a student applying for admission to Averett will be made by the Admissions Office. Students normally are classed as resident students unless they meet one of the following conditions:

1. Students who reside with their parents or a close relative within the city of Danville or within commuting distance.
2. Students who have previously established residence in the city or the immediate area while attending Danville Community College, Patrick Henry Community College, or Rockingham Community College.
3. Students who have established residence in the city of Danville or the immediate area one year prior to enrolling at Averett University.
4. Students who are transferring in at least 90 semester hours of credit.
5. Students who are married.
6. Students 23 years of age or older.
7. Students who have served 180 consecutive days of active duty in the military (reserve and National Guard members would not be eligible).

Appeals should be addressed to the Residence Life Office.

Averett University

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

> Beginning Freshmen
> Accelerated Admission
> International Students

> Transfer Student Admission
> Special Students
> Readmission

> Resident & Commuter Policy
> **Other Admissions**
> Campus Visits
> Admission Requirements

ADMISSIONS

Other Admissions

A. Non-Traditional Degree Admissions

Information about the Individually Designed Education for Adult Learners (IDEAL) is found [in the Non-traditional Education section](#) of this catalog. You may also consult the Admissions Office at Averett University. Information about the Graduate and Professional Studies programs (GPS) is found [in the Non-traditional Education section](#) of this catalog. Admissions requirements, program descriptions and requirements and course descriptions for GPS are found in a separate catalog.

B. Graduate Education Admission

Information regarding admission to the Master of Education and the Master of Arts in Teaching Programs may be obtained from the Department Chair or Director of Teacher Education. See *The Catamount* for more information

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Beginning Freshmen](#)
 > [Accelerated Admission](#)
 > [International Students](#)

> [Transfer Student Admission](#)
 > [Special Students](#)
 > [Readmission](#)

> [Resident & Commuter Policy](#)
 > [Other Admissions](#)
 > **[Campus Visits](#)**
 > [Admission Requirements](#)

ADMISSIONS

Campus Visits

Averett welcomes prospective students and parents throughout the year. As a service to visitors, guided tours of the campus are provided. The tours include visits to student residences, the dining hall, the library, and classrooms. A personal interview with an admissions counselor is highly recommended and meetings with individual students and/or faculty members are possible. The Admissions Office is open weekdays from 8:30 a. m. to 4:30 p.m.

Special visit days and open houses are excellent times to plan a campus visit. Because large numbers of prospective students visit the campus, the Admissions Office requests that interested persons inform the office of plans for a visit before arrival.

Telephone:	434-791-4996
Toll Free:	1-800-AVERETT (283-7833)
FAX:	434-797-2784
E-mail:	admit@averett.edu

Correspondence regarding admissions and campus visits should be addressed to:

Admissions Office
 Averett University
 Danville, Virginia 24541

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

> Beginning Freshmen
> Accelerated Admission
> International Students

> Transfer Student Admission
> Special Students
> Readmission

> Resident & Commuter Policy
> Other Admissions
> Campus Visits
> **Admission Requirements**

ADMISSIONS

Admission Requirements

The following table contains information that prospective students must submit to the Admissions Office. Contact the Admissions Office for further information and catalog explanation.

	Appli- cation	Appli- cation Fee	High School Tran- script	College Tran- script	SAT or ACT Scores	Letter of Recom- mendation	Advanced Place- ment Scores	Read- mission Form	Dean of Student Form	Enroll- ment Reser- vation Fee
Beginning Freshman	X		X	X ¹	X ³	X	X ¹			X
Transfer Student (without associate's degree)	X			X		X	X ¹		X ¹	X
Transfer Student (with associate's degree)	X			X		X	X ¹		X ¹	X
International Student	X	X	X	X ¹	X ⁵					X
Former Averett Student (who will transfer credit from another college)				X				X	X	X
Former Averett Student (who has not attended another college but who has not graduated)								X		X
IDEAL Student										
Beginning Freshman	X		X			X ³	X ³			X
Transfer Student	X		X	X					X ¹	X
Veteran	X ²		X	X ¹					X ¹	X
Special										
Non-degree Seeking	X		X ⁴	X ⁴						X

GPS

Contact GPS Office for admission information

Graduate Education Programs

Contact Director

IDEAL

Contact Director of IDEAL Program

¹ If applicable

² Contact Office of Registrar for other requirements

³ Unless student has been out of high school for 5 or more years

⁴ For advisement purposes (if applicable)

⁵ TOEFL may be substituted for SAT or ACT for non-English speaking students

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

> **Academic Programs**
 > General Education
 Curriculum
 > Academic Standards and
 Integrity

> Honor Societies
 > Academic Warning,
 Probation, and Suspension
 > General Regulations



ACADEMIC PROGRAM AND REGULATIONS

Degrees

Associate of Arts

A student may earn an Associate of Arts degree with a major in Liberal Arts by completing the core general education requirements and a minimum of 60 semester hours. A minimum of 16 semester hours must be taken at Averett. The [general education requirements](#) are elsewhere in this catalog.

Bachelor of Applied Science

Averett University offers the Bachelor of Applied Science degree to those individuals who meet the following requirements:

1. Possess an Associate of Applied Science degree from a regionally accredited institution with a 2.00 grade point average on work counted toward the associate's degree.
2. Complete a minimum of 33 semester hours at Averett University, including a minor in another field. Examples include:

Associate of Applied Science Degree

Microcomputer Systems
 Office Technology
 Printing Management
 Administration of Justice

Minor Field

Computer Science or Math
 Business or Computer Science
 Business
 Sociology

Note: Because of State licensure requirements, courses in the Department of Education may not be offered for the minor area.

3. Complete all Averett requirements for the baccalaureate degree, including a minimum of 60 semester hours from a senior institution.

Bachelor of Arts, Bachelor of Science

Students may earn a Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree by completing the core general education requirements along with a major area of study. A minimum of 123 semester hours is required for graduation. Requirements for specific majors may be found in [departmental descriptions](#). The following pages contain [general education requirements](#) and a complete list of the [requirements for graduation](#).

Associate of Science, Bachelor of Business Administration, Master of Business Administration

See the catalog for the Graduate and Professional Studies (GPS) Program.

Master of Arts in Teaching, Master of Education

See *The Catamount* for information about these degrees.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Academic Programs](#)
[> Goals](#)
[> Core & Proficiency Requirements](#)
[> Majors and Minors](#)
[> Honors Program](#)
[> International Study Opportunities](#)
[> Requirements for Graduation](#)
[> Second Baccalaureate Degree](#)

GENERAL EDUCATION CURRICULUM

Goals of the General Education Curriculum

The Averett University curriculum seeks to develop our students as lifelong learners with the appropriate skills and knowledge to become creative and critical thinkers, effective communicators, and positive contributors to society. Moreover, we encourage students to examine myriad cultural expressions and values so that they may develop an appreciation of the contributions of others and acquire knowledge that may serve as a foundation for continuing development.

- I. **Averett University seeks to enhance in students the following fundamental skills, which are requisite for entertaining important intellectual ideas:**

A. Fluency in Oral and Written Communication

The ability to comprehend others and to express themselves clearly enables students to participate freely in the lively exchange of ideas that characterizes the search for truth.

Accordingly, Averett University encourages students to become fluent in reading, writing, speaking, and listening. The University considers passing two writing-intensive courses, two oral-intensive courses, and the writing competency exam to be a sufficient demonstration of competence for this goal. Students may elect to take English 265, Critical Thinking and Analytical Writing, in lieu of the exam. Attaining a passing grade in English 265 exempts a student from the exam.

B. Mathematical Understanding

In a world where quantitative information forms the basis for inquiry into many diverse areas, citizens must have the mathematical foundation necessary for understanding and critically evaluating this information.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to develop students' facility with the language, techniques, theory, and applications of mathematics to build fluency in the communication of mathematical ideas. The University defines the skill set for MTH 103 to be the minimum level of competence for this goal. Students may demonstrate these skills by passing MTH 103 or its equivalent (at Averett or at another college) or a higher level math course.

C. Critical Thinking

Critical thinking is essential to the ability to analyze and solve problems, make intelligent decisions, and explain ideas to others.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to develop the critical thinking of students by improving their analytic skills and by giving them the tools to evaluate information. The University considers the entire General Education core to address this competency, and considers completion of the core to be sufficient demonstration of competence in critical thinking.

D. Technological Literacy

The explosion of advances in information technology poses a challenge to

citizens. Students must develop the ability to adjust to changes in technology that will continue to evolve rapidly after their formal education is completed.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to provide a foundation for adapting to future technological advances by involving students in the use of current technology across the university curriculum to accomplish intellectual tasks. The University defines competence in this area by a series of skills, which may be demonstrated through passing a class (CSS 113 or 114) or by demonstrating the skills to the satisfaction of one or more faculty members. In the latter case, the faculty member(s) will fill out the "Technological Literacy Competency" tracking sheet for the student to submit to the Registrar's Office. Computer Science and Computer Information Systems majors automatically fulfill this requirement.

II. **Averett University encourages enlightened participation in society through exploration of cultural expressions:**

A. The Cultural Context

Historical Awareness

Citizens who are capable of confident and effective action in today's world require an awareness of the past that can inform them of historical forces that shape current events.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to provide students with a broad historical context for understanding today's events by examining the intellectual and social roots of civilization. Students may demonstrate these competencies by passing HIS 101-102.

Knowledge of Other Cultures

Today's students must understand the differences among various cultures and the commonality of concerns shared by all cultures.

Accordingly, by providing students experiences with cultures other than their own, Averett University seeks to cultivate a more cosmopolitan view of the world, wherein students seek experiences outside their own culture. Students may demonstrate [this competency](#) in a variety of ways.

Appreciation and Understanding of Literature

An understanding and appreciation of literature is important to the development of students as thoughtful and perceptive individuals. A careful study of literature makes students aware of the relationship between literary works and the cultural/historical milieu out of which they come. Such a study also makes students more aware of the timelessness of literature, which reflects the unchanging predicament of all men and women.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to develop students' abilities to comprehend, analyze, and discuss literature. Students may demonstrate this competency by passing an English literature course numbered 200 or higher (except ENG 316).

B. Personal Development

Awareness of Values

As citizens of an increasingly complex and diverse world, individuals are required to make informed ethical decisions and value judgments that affect the quality of life. It is essential for students to understand the bases for their own moral philosophies and those of others and to be able to assume responsibility for their decisions.

Accordingly, Averett University encourages students to examine their personal value systems, relating them to the religious, historical, and philosophical underpinnings of the larger society's moral traditions. Students may demonstrate this competency by fulfilling the General Education requirement for six hours in [Religion/Philosophy](#).

Understanding of Human Interaction and Social Institutions

The effectiveness of members of society is dependent upon their ability to interact with each other and within social institutions.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to develop in students an intellectual framework for understanding human relationships and the societal context within which they occur. Students may demonstrate this competency by fulfilling the General Education requirement for 9 hours in the social sciences (in addition to HIS 101-102).

Scientific Discovery

In order to function in a world largely shaped by scientific activity, students must have the foundation necessary to understand, interpret, and evaluate scientific information.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to develop students' understanding of the scientific method of examining and explaining natural phenomena. Students may demonstrate this competency by passing at least one laboratory course in the natural sciences.

The Human Aesthetic Response

The fine arts represent a significant means of creative expression through which societies define and reveal themselves. Knowledge of the forms and conventions of the arts enhances students' ability to respond to the creative process of the human intellect.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to heighten students' aesthetic sensitivity and to encourage involvement with the artistic endeavors of their communities. Students may fulfill this requirement by passing the 6 hours of fine arts required in the General Education core.

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

> Academic Programs
> Goals

> **Core & Proficiency Requirements**
> Majors and Minors
> Honors Program

> International Study Opportunities
> Requirements for Graduation
> Second Baccalaureate Degree

GENERAL EDUCATION CURRICULUM

Information concerning [Core General Education Requirements](#) and [Proficiency Requirements](#) are found on this page.

Core General Education Requirements

Requirements for Associate of Arts, Bachelor of Applied Science, Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Science:

ENGLISH*

9 semester hours

__ENG 111**

__ENG 112**

__Any literature course for which the prerequisite has been met, with the exception of ENG 316 or ENG 470.

*All entering students are expected to take an English placement test. A student who is placed in ENG 100, Fundamentals of English, must complete that course successfully before enrolling in ENG 111. **Credit for ENG 100 may not be used to meet the 123 hours required for graduation.**

****Averett University does not accept a transfer grade of D in ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research or ENG 112, Introduction to Literature (or their equivalents).**

FINE ARTS

6 semester hours

Two courses from the following:

__ART 100

__ART 201

__ART 205

__ART 305

__ART 306

__ART 405

__MUS 100

__MUS 260

__MUS 261

__TH 105

__TH 220

__TH 221

HISTORY AND SOCIAL SCIENCES

15 semester hours

__HIS 101

__HIS 102

Plus three courses (9 hours) from two or more of the following fields:

Economics

__ Any Economics course except ECO 300

History

__Any History course for which the prerequisite has been met.

Political Science

Any Political Science course for which the prerequisite has been met.

Psychology

__Any Psychology course for which the prerequisite has been met, except PSY 120.

Sociology/Criminal Justice

__Any Sociology or Criminal Justice course for which the prerequisite has been met.

RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

6 semester hours

__REL 101 or REL 102

__3 hour course in Religion or Philosophy except REL 360, 361, 362, 453, 454.

INTERDISCIPLINARY STUDIES

2 semester hours

__IDS 101, Freshman Topics

Additional General Education Requirements for an Associate of Arts or a Bachelor of Arts Degree:

MATHEMATICS*

3 semester hours

__MTH 103

__MTH 104

__MTH 171

__MTH 201

__Any other Math course for which the prerequisite has been met.

__CSS 203

Students who wish to be licensed to teach in grades PK-6 should take the following 6 hours instead of the Math courses listed above.

HISTORY AND SOCIAL SCIENCES

15 semester hours

__HIS 101

__HIS 102

Plus three courses (9 hours) from two or more of the following fields:

Economics

__ Any Economics course except ECO 300

History

__Any History course for which the prerequisite has been met.

Political Science

Any Political Science course for which the prerequisite has been met.

Psychology

__Any Psychology course for which the prerequisite has been met, except PSY 120.

Sociology/Criminal Justice

__Any Sociology or Criminal Justice course for which the prerequisite has been met.

RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

6 semester hours

__REL 101 or REL 102

__3 hour course in Religion or Philosophy except REL 360, 361, 362, 453, 454.

INTERDISCIPLINARY STUDIES

2 semester hours

__IDS 101, Freshman Topics

Additional General Education Requirements for an Associate of Arts or a Bachelor of Arts Degree:

MATHEMATICS*

3 semester hours

__MTH 103

__MTH 104

__MTH 171

__MTH 201

__Any other Math course for which the prerequisite has been met.

__CSS 203

Students who wish to be licensed to teach in grades PK-6 should take the following 6 hours instead of the Math courses listed above.

__MTH 111

__MTH 112

*All entering students who do not offer transfer credits or Advanced Placement (AP) credits in math are expected to take a mathematics placement test. The placement test will help determine whether a student is placed in MTH 100, 103, 104, 171, 201 or higher. A student who is placed in 104, 201, or 202 but elects to take a lower level mathematics course will receive credit for it, but the course will not satisfy a general education requirement in mathematics.

A student who is placed in MTH 100, Fundamentals of Mathematics, must complete that course successfully before enrolling in MTH 103 or MTH 111. **Credit for MTH 100 may not be used to meet the 123 hours required for graduation.**

NATURAL SCIENCE

4 semester hours*

__BIO 101

__Any other Biology course for which the prerequisite has been met.

__CH 101

__CH 102

__ENS 215

__ES 208

__PSC 101

__PSC 110

__PSC 201

__PSC 202

__PSC 203

__PSY 120

* One science course that includes a laboratory experience

FOREIGN LANGUAGE , *****

6-14 semester hours*

__FR 101

__FR 102

__FR 201

__FR 202

__FR 221

__FR 222

__FR 225

__FR 317

__FR 318

__FR 319

__SPA 101

__SPA 102

__SPA 201

__SPA 202

__SPA 221

__SPA 222

__SPA 315

__SPA 316

__SPA 317

__GRK 101

__GRK 102

__HEB 101

__HEB 102

__MTH 111

__MTH 112

*All entering students who do not offer transfer credits or Advanced Placement (AP) credits in math are expected to take a mathematics placement test. The placement test will help determine whether a student is placed in MTH 100, 103, 104, 171, 201 or higher. A student who is placed in 104, 201, or 202 but elects to take a lower level mathematics course will receive credit for it, but the course will not satisfy a general education requirement in mathematics.

A student who is placed in MTH 100, Fundamentals of Mathematics, must complete that course successfully before enrolling in MTH 103 or MTH 111. **Credit for MTH 100 may not be used to meet the 123 hours required for graduation.**

NATURAL SCIENCE

4 semester hours*

__BIO 101

__Any other Biology course for which the prerequisite has been met.

__CH 101

__CH 102

__ENS 215

__ES 208

__PSC 101

__PSC 110

__PSC 201

__PSC 202

__PSC 203

__PSY 120

* One science course that includes a laboratory experience

FOREIGN LANGUAGE**, ***

6-14 semester hours*

__FR 101

__FR 102

__FR 201

__FR 202

__FR 221

__FR 222

__FR 225

__FR 317

__FR 318

__FR 319

__SPA 101

__SPA 102

__SPA 201

__SPA 202

__SPA 221

__SPA 222

__SPA 315

__SPA 316

__SPA 317

__GRK 101

__GRK 102

__HEB 101

__HEB 102

*Dependent upon placement test results.

** Students must pass six semester hours at the 200 level or above. (The courses to be taken will be determined by the placement test results.), or they must complete GRK 101, GRK 102 and HEB 101, HEB 102.

***Students whose native language is other than English may complete the language requirements for a B.A. degree by passing a second English course numbered 200 or higher.

Additional General Education Requirements for a Bachelor of Applied Science or a Bachelor of Science Degree:

MATHEMATICS*

6 semester hours

- MTH 103
- MTH 104
- MTH 171
- MTH 201
- Any other Math course for which the prerequisite has been met.
- CSS 203

Students who wish to be licensed to teach in grades PK-6 should take the following 6 hours instead of the Math courses listed above.

- MTH 111
- MTH 112

*All entering students who do not offer transfer credits or Advanced Placement (AP) credits in math are expected to take a mathematics placement test. The placement test will help determine whether a student is placed in MTH 100, 103, 104, 201 or higher. A student who is placed in 104, 201, or 202 but elects to take a lower level mathematics course will receive credit for it, but the course will not satisfy a general education requirement in mathematics.

A student who is placed in MTH 100, Fundamentals of Mathematics, must complete that course successfully before enrolling in MTH 103 or MTH 111. **Credit for MTH 100 may not be used to meet the 123 hours required for graduation.**

NATURAL SCIENCE

8 semester hours*

- BIO 101
- Any other Biology course for which the prerequisite has been met.
- CH 101 ES 208 PSC 201 PSY 120
- CH 102 PSC 101 PSC 202
- ENS 215 PSC 110 PSC 203

- * Two science courses that include laboratory experience

Proficiency Requirements

The educated individual is expected to possess a number of skills and competencies. To ensure that Averett students have demonstrated a minimal level of proficiency in many of these areas, the faculty established methods of assessment and standards of achievement for written and oral communication, technological literacy, and knowledge of other cultures.

1. Writing Competency

- A. Students must take two courses designated as **writing-intensive** in addition to ENG 111. These two courses may be in any discipline; however, ENG 112, 201, 202, and 220 will not count as writing-intensive courses. Writing-intensive courses:
 - a. must include instruction and feedback on writing.
 - b. must have a minimum of 15 pages of writing.
 - c. should contain one or more of the following types of writing required as the instructor deems appropriate:
 - research paper or essays
 - book reviews
 - critical analyses, case studies, and/or summaries of articles.
 - d. must be designed so that the student must pass the writing requirements in order to pass the course.
 - e. should have approximately half of the writing returned with suggestions for improvement. The student should then submit the revised writing (or new writing) reflecting these suggestions.

Students may transfer writing-intensive courses from another institution by submitting a syllabus from the course they took to the Dean of Arts and Sciences or to the Registrar. If the course can be judged to satisfy the requirements listed above, it can count towards the completion of the graduation requirement.

- B. Students must either pass a **writing competency exam** (ENG 001) administered through the English Department **or** pass **ENG 265**, Critical Thinking and Analytical Writing, with a grade of C or better in order to meet requirements for graduation. Students will be notified of the dates on which the exams will be administered each year.

2. Oral Competency

Each student must take two courses labeled **oral-intensive** and pass the oral requirements of each course to successfully fulfill requirements for graduation. One of the courses must be in the student's major or minor.

Courses labeled as oral-intensive must have a minimum requirement of ten minutes of oral presentations divided as each instructor deems appropriate for the objectives of the course. The presentations will be evaluated according to the university-approved rating scale.

The student will receive a grade of P or NP (No Pass) and the grade remains separate from the evaluation of the academic work accrued for credit in the course.

Students may transfer oral intensive courses from another institution by submitting a syllabus from the course they took to the Dean of Arts and Sciences or to the Registrar. If the course can be judged to satisfy the requirements listed above, it can count towards the completion of the graduation requirement.

3. **Technological Literacy**

Students should be able to:

- use appropriate technology to accomplish their intellectual tasks.
- demonstrate competence in the use of computers for at least **two categories** of tasks

Students may demonstrate the skills listed below by passing CSS 113 or CSS 114. Alternatively, the student's expertise may be confirmed by one or more faculty members, who will sign the appropriate sections of the "Technological Literacy Competency" tracking sheet. The student must then submit it to the Registrar's Office for inclusion in his/her record.

Category A: Word Processing/Presentation Software/Desktop Publishing Packages

Students should be able to complete such assignments as:

- retrieve and save document files
- use basic features of the software such as underlining, bolding text
- change text size, and work with different fonts
- block and move text or graphics (e.g., cutting and pasting)
- use spell checking or grammar checking features of the program
- navigate menu features
- manipulate document layout

Category B: Spreadsheet/Financial/Accounting Packages

Students should be able to complete such assignments as:

- retrieve and save worksheet files
- enter data into rows and columns and perform basic operations such as totaling and averaging columns and rows
- use basic formulas (e.g., to get totals) and format cells
- navigate menu features

Category C: Database Packages

Students should be able to complete such assignments as:

- retrieve and save database files
- understand basic database terminology (e.g., fields and records)
- enter and edit data
- query the database
- navigate menu features

Category D: Communications/Internet Packages

Students should be able to complete such assignments as:

- successfully access the Internet
- compose, send, and retrieve electronic mail messages
- use a world wide browser to access the World Wide Web
- use one or more search engines to find information on the World Wide Web
- navigate menu features

Category E: Math/Science/Statistical Packages

Students should have skills comparable to those outlined in the aforementioned packages. **Drill and practice software would not be considered appropriate packages for demonstrating minimal technological literacy.**

4. Knowledge of Other Cultures

All Bachelor of Arts candidates fulfill this competency through their foreign language requirement. Students seeking the Bachelor of Science degree may meet this competency by fulfilling one of the following options:

- a. complete a course (minimum of three-semester hours) in which the major focus is cultural norms, values, and/or belief systems of a culture or cultures not their own. These include, but are not limited to, HIS 101-102, REL 101, REL 102, SOC 230, or POS/HIS 455.
- b. participate in university-sponsored study-abroad experience.
- c. complete a course which has a major focus on language or traditions of another culture. Averett courses which will meet the requirement are:

GRK or HEB 101, 102, Introduction to Greek/Hebrew I, II
FR or SPA 101, 102, Beginning French/Spanish I, II
FR or SPA 201, 202, Intermediate French/Spanish I, II
FR or SPA 221, Conversation and Listening
FR or SPA 222, Advanced Writing and Grammar
FR 225 or SPA 315, Introduction to Literature
Any 300-level FR or SPA culture and civilization course

Students also may present evidence of proficiency in a foreign language by transferring course credits from another institution. It is the student's responsibility to see that a transcript from the other school is on file in the Registrar's Office at Averett University. International students may meet this requirement in either of the above ways as long as the language presented is not their native language.

- d. Prepare a portfolio of multicultural experiences.

Students should develop a portfolio which includes, but is not limited to, at least one of the following experiences:

1. Foreign Travel: Student will spend a minimum of one week in a foreign country with a plane ticket, passport, or visa to verify the length of stay. The student will also

submit photo and/or video records of the trip and a travel diary that describes the culture visited. The travel diary should record such things as the customs, food, language, dress, climate, history, fine arts, etc. of the country or countries visited.

2. One-on-One Cultural Experience: For a minimum period of at least one academic semester, the student will live with, or will host, a person from another country. The student will keep a journal recording the interactions with this person and what has been learned about the visitor's homeland including the customs, food, language, dress, climate, history, fine arts, etc. The journal should also include an "interview" with the visitor about his/her reactions to the United States.
3. Other Multicultural Experiences: A student may gain multicultural experiences in other ways: attending exhibits, festivals, lectures, international dance, musical and/or athletic performances, reviewing documentary films or videos. Doing volunteer work with international groups such as migrant workers might enhance the student's cultural awareness.

The student will complete at least ten of these types of activities with no more than three of any one type of activity (e.g., videos, dance performances). For each activity, the student must present a typed one-page summary. After completion of all activities, the student must present a written summary of the entire experience which indicates the extent to which the student's cultural awareness has been enhanced. The student should complete all ten of these activities after enrolling in Averett University.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Academic Programs](#)
[> Goals](#)

[> Core & Proficiency Requirements](#)
[> **Majors and Minors**](#)
[> Honors Program](#)

[> International Study Opportunities](#)
[> Requirements for Graduation](#)
[> Second Baccalaureate Degree](#)

GENERAL EDUCATION CURRICULUM

Majors and Minors

In order to graduate with a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree from Averett University, students must complete the core general education requirements, a major area of study, and, if desired, a minor and/or second major area of study and electives. Because Averett is a liberal arts university, the graduation plan may include no more than 50 percent of the hours for graduation in the major area of study.

Four alternative approaches may be followed in developing a major area of study.

- I. **The traditional major with a minor:** Such programs require a specified amount of work in a major area of study with an additional 18 semester hours in a minor concentration or in related fields. The requirements for a major area of study vary according to the department and are described under each academic department in the section on Degree Programs.
- II. **Interdisciplinary majors:** The University has designed several majors which cross traditional disciplinary lines. The requirements for such majors have been specified by the faculty and are described in the section on Degree Programs.
- III. **Liberal Studies major:** The University has designed a special degree program which allows a student to plan a course of study combining course work from a minimum of three different departments. Procedures for the development of a Liberal Studies major are described [below](#). The Liberal Studies major may not have a double major.
- IV. **Individually designed interdisciplinary majors:** The faculty recognizes that some students have unique educational goals and interests which may not be best realized by means of traditional majors or the structured interdisciplinary programs. Such students are encouraged to propose a plan of study which will draw broadly upon the learning resources of the University. The plan must be approved by a faculty committee and the Dean of Arts and Sciences. The student may not have a double major with the individually designed interdisciplinary major. Inquiries regarding this option should be addressed to the Dean of Arts and Sciences.

The student's Averett University transcript will show a maximum of two (2) majors and two (2) minors.

The following is a list of degrees, majors, minors and teacher licensure fields available to students.

Students may earn a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree in the following disciplines:

- o Aerospace Management
- o Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice
- o Art
- o Biology
- o Biology/Chemistry
- o Business Administration
- o Chemistry
- o Computer Information Systems
- o Computer Science
- o Criminal Justice (See Sociology/Criminal Justice)
- o Elementary Education (See Liberal Studies)
- o Equestrian Studies
- o Liberal Studies (with or without teacher certification)

- Mathematics
- Mathematical Decision Science
- Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science
- Psychology
- Sociology
- Sociology/Criminal Justice (4-year Program)
- Theatre with Teaching License

Students must earn a Bachelor of Arts degree in the following disciplines:

- Art
- English
- English/History (Pre-Law)
- English/Theatre
- History
- History/Social Science (with Teaching License)
- Journalism
- Music
- Political Science
- Religion
- Theatre

Students must earn a Bachelor of Science degree in the following disciplines:

- Medical Technology
- Physical Education: Athletic Training
- Sociology/Criminal Justice (2+2 program)

Teacher Certification is available in the following disciplines:

- Art
- Biology
- Chemistry
- English
- English/Theatre
- History/Social Science
- Liberal Studies (Elementary Education)
- Mathematics
- Health, Physical Education and Drivers Education
- Theatre

Add-on teaching endorsements are available in the following areas:

- Computer Science
- Journalism
- Special Education (Minor)
- Speech

Academic minors are available in the following disciplines:

- Art
- Biology
- Business Administration
- Chemistry
- Church Ministries
- Computer Information Systems
- Computer Science
- Criminal Justice
- English
- Equestrian Studies
- French
- History
- Journalism
- Leadership Studies
- Mathematics

- o Music
- o Physical Education
- o Political Science
- o Psychology
- o Religion
- o Sociology
- o Spanish
- o Theatre

Minors

In addition to a major concentration, each student may elect to have a minor area of concentration to complement the major. A minor is available in disciplines noted previously. A minor normally requires the completion of at least 18 semester hours, 9 hours of which must be at the 300 or 400 level, unless otherwise specified by the department. Specific requirements for minors in each discipline are indicated in the Degree Program section of this catalog. A student may not elect a minor from courses which have the same departmental prefix as the major, e.g., a student may not major in Art and minor in Art History. Transfer students must complete a minimum of 6 semester hours in the minor field at Averett. Students must attain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

Formal Declaration of Major and Minor

Major

Each student is expected to file a declaration of major with the Registrar by the beginning of the junior year. Students who wish to change majors or add a second major must notify the Registrar. **Any change in major may result in the delay of the date of graduation.**

Some professional programs have special admissions requirements and procedures. The student should consult the section of this catalog that describes those programs and/or see the chairs of the specific departments.

Minor

Students who elect to have a minor area of concentration must file a declaration of minor with the Registrar. Minors should be declared before the start of the senior year and all requirements must be completed through regularly scheduled classes. A student may not elect a minor from courses which have the same departmental prefix as the major, e.g., a student may not major in BSA: Accounting and minor in BSA: Management Science.

Liberal Studies Major (Without Teacher Licensure)

A student may earn either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science Degree in Liberal Studies.

The major will be planned in conjunction with an advisor and must be approved by a Liberal Studies Committee. The procedures for developing a Liberal Studies major are outlined below:

1. The student must develop a preliminary plan for the Liberal Studies major with the Dean of Arts and Sciences.
2. The student and the Dean will select a faculty committee which will guide the student's academic program. The committee will be composed of a faculty member from each of the three areas of concentration.
3. When the faculty committee, the student, and the Dean have approved the courses to be included in the major, the Registrar's Office will prepare a degree plan.
4. The committee and the student must approve any changes in the degree plan.
5. The Dean of Arts and Sciences will serve as the student's advisor or will assign a faculty member from one of the areas of concentration to serve as the academic advisor.

The following policies govern this degree program.

1. The student must meet all general education requirements of the University.
2. The student must complete a minimum of 60 semester hours at a senior college, the last 33 of which must be at Averett.
3. The student must maintain a cumulative grade point average of 2.00 in the courses submitted for the Liberal Studies major.

4. The student must select three areas of concentration and must complete a minimum of 12 semester hours in each area, exclusive of the general education requirements, with a maximum of 21 semester hours being accepted from any one area of concentration.
5. The student must complete a minimum of 40 semester hours at the 300 or 400 level. Approximately 27 of these hours should be taken at Averett University.
6. The student must elect the Bachelor of Arts degree if two of the three departments in the major are from Art, English, History, Journalism, Music, Political Science, Religion or Theatre.
7. The student must elect the Bachelor of Science degree if two of the three departments in the major are from Biology, Chemistry, Business Administration, Education, Mathematics, Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science, Psychology or Sociology.

A student who has declared a Liberal Studies major and who subsequently elects to change to a major in a specific discipline must satisfy all of the departmental requirements for that major. The student may not have a double major with the Liberal Studies major.

Liberal Studies: (With Teacher Licensure)

All candidates desiring a teaching license in Elementary (PK-6) Education must complete requirements for the [Liberal Studies](#) degree as outlined in the Education section of this catalog.

Pre-Professional Studies

Averett provides pre-professional preparation for students planning to enter schools of dentistry, law, medicine, nursing or theology. In addition, the University has entered into an articulation agreement with the New York College of Podiatric Medicine. Although the University does not offer these pre-professional preparations as majors (with the exception of English/History [Pre-Law]), students are assigned an academic advisor who is cognizant of the appropriate courses for entrance into one of the professional schools. The student who anticipates attending a professional school, however, should consult the catalog of the preferred professional school in selecting courses at Averett University.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Academic Programs](#)
[> Goals](#)

[> Core & Proficiency
Requirements](#)
[> Majors and Minors](#)
[> **Honors Program**](#)

[> International Study
Opportunities](#)
[> Requirements for Graduation](#)
[> Second Baccalaureate
Degree](#)

GENERAL EDUCATION CURRICULUM

Honors Program

The [Honors Program](#), operating within the liberal arts philosophy of the University, enhances the academic life of the institution, creates a scholarly ethos, provides an academic challenge, and recognizes students' needs to express creativity, to develop one's humanity, and to see the world from different vantage points.

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Academic Programs](#)

[> Goals](#)

[> Core & Proficiency
Requirements](#)

[> Majors and Minors](#)

[> Honors Program](#)

[> **International Study
Opportunities**](#)

[> Requirements for Graduation](#)

[> Second Baccalaureate
Degree](#)

GENERAL EDUCATION CURRICULUM

International Study Opportunities

Averett University encourages students to gain learning experiences which can only be obtained by an extended period of time in another country or culture. In addition to occasional travel courses conducted by Averett faculty, the instructors in French and Spanish can assist the student with arrangements to study in countries where those languages prevail. Semester or year abroad programs are also available through cooperative arrangements with other institutions. Through membership in the Consortium for Global Education, opportunities are made available for study of various durations in the Peoples Republic of China, the former USSR, and Eastern European countries. For information about these study abroad programs, the student should contact the Dean of Arts and Sciences.

Averett University has entered into an exchange program with the Hong Kong Baptist University, the largest Baptist institution outside the United States. An Averett student, who is eligible and interested, may apply to study at Hong Kong for one semester or for a full year. Courses from Hong Kong will transfer to Averett. For further information, contact the Dean of Arts and Sciences.

Averett University is co-sponsor of an archaeological dig in Israel most summers. Contact Dr. John Laughlin, Chair of the Religion Department, for details regarding this program.

Students majoring in Equestrian Studies may study for one semester or a summer in England in a course specifically designed to prepare them for the British Horse Society Assistant Instructor's Certificate. Students should consult with the Chair of the Department of Equestrian Studies for details concerning the B.H.S.A.I. Program.

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

> Academic Programs

> Goals

> Core & Proficiency
Requirements

> Majors and Minors

> Honors Program

> International Study
Opportunities

> **Requirements for
Graduation**

> Second Baccalaureate
Degree

GENERAL EDUCATION CURRICULUM

Requirements for Graduation

The basic requirements for an undergraduate degree from Averett University are a minimum of 123 semester hours of credit (60 semester hours of credit for the associate degrees) with at least a 2.00 grade point average on all work attempted as well as on courses offered to complete the major. Other specific requirements are listed below:

1. Students must satisfactorily complete all Core General Education requirements.
2. Students must achieve satisfactory completion of a specified major area of study.
3. Students must satisfy [competencies](#) in writing, oral communication, technology, and knowledge of other cultures.
4. Of the 123 semester hours credit, at least 60 must be taken from courses outside the major field.
5. The last 33 semester hours of academic work prior to graduation must be taken at Averett University.
6. Transfer students must complete a minimum of 60 semester hours at a senior college or university, at least 33 of which must be from Averett University.
7. Transfer students must satisfactorily complete a minimum of 12 semester hours in the major field at Averett University. Individual programs may have higher semester-hour requirements.
8. Students who are first admitted to Averett University as special students must earn a minimum of 30 semester hours of credit after obtaining degree-seeking status. (See the section on [Special Students](#).)
9. Students must file an application for graduation with the Registrar's Office by the designated date in the semester in which graduation is planned. See the university calendar for the exact dates. Appropriate forms are available in the Registrar's Office.
10. Students must have completed all requirements for graduation in order to participate in commencement exercises.
11. Students must have met all financial obligations to the University in order to participate in graduation. All tuition, fees, fines, bookstore charges and other bills must be paid in full prior to participating in graduation.

In addition to the requirements listed above, students must participate in a university-wide exit questionnaire and/or departmental exit examination. Students should consult with the individual department for details.

It is the student's responsibility to be familiar with and to fulfill all requirements for graduation.

A student may choose to graduate under the requirements of any Averett University catalog in effect from the date of the student's entrance through the year of the student's graduation, providing enrollment for fall and spring terms has not been interrupted.

If continuous enrollment in the University has been interrupted for one or more semesters, the student must graduate under the catalog that is current upon his/her readmission.

If degree requirements are changed so that a once-required course is no longer offered, the department or University may substitute a comparable course requirement.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Academic Programs](#)
[> Goals](#)
[> Core & Proficiency Requirements](#)
[> Majors and Minors](#)
[> Honors Program](#)
[> International Study](#)
[Opportunities](#)
[> Requirements for Graduation](#)
[> **Second Baccalaureate Degree**](#)

GENERAL EDUCATION CURRICULUM

Second Baccalaureate Degree

The student who has a baccalaureate degree from Averett University or another accredited institution of higher education may receive a second baccalaureate degree upon the successful completion of an additional minimum of 33 semester hours of work at Averett University. Specific course requirements for the major field for the second degree must be satisfied. The student will be considered to have completed the General Education requirements of Averett University by possessing a baccalaureate degree. However, if the first degree was a Bachelor of Science and the second degree is to be a Bachelor of Arts, the student must have completed the intermediate level of a modern foreign language or Greek 101, 102 and Hebrew 101, 102. Similarly, if the first degree was a Bachelor of Arts and the second degree is to be a Bachelor of Science, the student must have completed at least 6 semester hours of mathematics and at least 2 lab sciences (8 hours).

The student may add a second major to his/her degree after graduating provided the second major is completed within one calendar year following the awarding of the diploma. The student must declare intent to complete the second major prior to the final semester of coursework for the first major.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Academic Programs](#)
[> **Class Attendance**](#)
[> The Honor Code](#)
[> Evaluation of Academic Work](#)
[> Grade Appeal](#)
[> Academic Honors](#)

ACADEMIC STANDARDS AND INTEGRITY

Class Attendance

Regular class attendance is an obligation implicit in the agreement between the students who apply for admission and the college which admits them. Anyone enrolled in a course is responsible for the work done in all class meetings. **Therefore, the University expects students to attend all class meetings of the courses for which they are enrolled.**

No right or privilege exists which justifies absence from any number of class meetings. There is no official distinction between an excused and unexcused absence. It is the student's responsibility to notify his/her instructors if he/she will be absent from a class because of an official university representation, such as concerts, intercollegiate athletic events, equestrian events, or field trips. This notification is to inform only and is not an excuse for the absence. The student is responsible for the work done in the class meetings that are missed because of events stated above. The student should determine with each instructor whether that absence will affect the grade in that course.

Specific attendance requirements for each course are included in the syllabus provided by the instructor of the course. Both the student and the instructor are expected to be concerned and responsible in the matter of class attendance and to keep records of any necessary absences. When absences endanger a student's academic standing or indicate serious lack of commitment to the work of the course, appropriate action should be taken to remedy the situation.

If a student does not attend the first two class meetings at the beginning of the semester, the instructor may notify the Registrar's Office to drop the student from the course in order to allow students on a waiting list to add the course. Once a student has attended a class, failure to continue to attend class does not constitute a withdrawal from the course. The procedures for withdrawal from a course are found in the [Registration](#) section in this catalog. **Students who stop attending classes without formally withdrawing from the course will receive a grade of F for the semester.**

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Academic Programs](#)
[> Class Attendance](#)
[> **The Honor Code**](#)
[> Evaluation of Academic Work](#)
[> Grade Appeal](#)
[> Academic Honors](#)

ACADEMIC STANDARDS AND INTEGRITY

The Honor Code

One mark of an educated individual is personal integrity. The members of the Averett University community are committed to a code of behavior which may be found in the Student Handbook. A student is thus pledged to academic honesty. As academic honesty is considered to be the foundation of the educational enterprise, any form of cheating or plagiarism is considered to be an affront to the entire University community and may result in suspension from the University. Students should carefully study the honor code, and should be especially familiar with the definitions of cheating and plagiarism.

1. Cheating - Includes the following behaviors:
 - a. copying another student's answers while completing any class assignment or during in-class and take-home examinations.
 - b. using notes, books or any unauthorized aids during an examination.
 - c. discussing answers during in-class examinations.
 - d. submitting another student's work as one's own.
 - e. stealing another student's work
2. Plagiarism - Submitting a paper in which the language, ideas or thought are identical to published or unpublished material from another source without correctly giving credit to that source.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Academic Programs](#)
[> Class Attendance](#)
[> The Honor Code](#)
[> Evaluation of Academic Work](#)
[> Grade Appeal](#)
[> Academic Honors](#)

ACADEMIC STANDARDS AND INTEGRITY

Evaluation of Academic Work

Academic work is evaluated and grades are assigned at the end of each academic term in order to indicate a student's level of performance. Grades are assigned by the faculty member responsible for each course.

A student earns quality points as well as semester hours if the grade in a course is not less than "D". The letter grades awarded by Averett, their interpretations, and the quality points per hour of credit are shown in the following table.

Letter Grade	Interpretation	Quality Points
A	Excellent Work	4
B	Good/Above Average Work	3
C	Average/Satisfactory Work	2
D	Passing/Below Average Work	1
F	Failure/Unsatisfactory Work	0
I	Incomplete	-
P	Pass (not counted in cumulative average)	-
@R	Course must be repeated	-
W	Withdrawal (extenuating circumstances)	-
*WP	Withdrawal Passing	-
*WF	Withdrawal Failing (counted in cumulative average)	0
NC	No credit or Audit	-
NP	Not Passing (not counted in cumulative average)	-
X	No Grade Reported	-
@A, @B, or @C	Passing grade for ENG100 or MTH100	-

*To receive a withdrawal grade (WP or WF), the student must officially withdraw from the University or drop the course. Courses with the grade WP are not calculated as hours attempted and do not affect the cumulative grade point average. Courses for which the grade WF is recorded are included in hours attempted and receive no quality points; thus, they affect the GPA in the same manner as a grade of F. See the [Registration](#) section of this catalog for information concerning withdrawing from

a course.

The grade of Incomplete (I) may be given to a student who is unable to complete scheduled course requirements. It is a privilege that may be granted by the instructor under extraordinary circumstances and may be awarded only when the student has completed a significant portion of the coursework and has made specific arrangements with the instructor for the completion of the work. If the student has not completed the coursework by the end of the agreed upon time period, the grade will be changed to an F. The maximum amount of time that the instructor may allow for completion is until the last day of classes the following semester. Emergency extension may be considered with the approval of the faculty member and the Dean of Arts and Sciences.

The **grade point average** (GPA) of a student's academic work is determined by means of quality points. The grade point average is calculated by dividing the total number of quality points earned by the total number of GPA credit hours. (GPA credits are attempted credits exclusive of those for which a grade of P or WP is recorded.)

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Academic Programs](#)
[> Class Attendance](#)
[> The Honor Code](#)
[> Evaluation of Academic](#)
[Work](#)
[> **Grade Appeal**](#)
[> Academic Honors](#)

ACADEMIC STANDARDS AND INTEGRITY

Grade Appeal

In the absence of compelling reasons, such as error or bad faith, the grade determined by the instructor of record is to be considered final. A student who believes an appropriate grade has not been assigned should follow the procedures described below to appeal the grade.

1. Discuss the matter with the instructor involved.
2. If the student does not receive satisfaction in dealing with the instructor or feels too uncomfortable in dealing with the instructor directly, he/she should discuss the issue with the department chair.
3. If, after consulting with the chair, the student still feels that he/she has been dealt with unsatisfactorily or inequitably, he/she may submit a written appeal to the Dean of Arts and Sciences. **The written appeal must be submitted no later than 30 days into the semester following the receipt of the grade in question. Grade appeals from the spring or summer terms must be initiated by 30 days into the fall semester.**
4. At his/her discretion, the Dean may establish a review committee to study the issue and make recommendations for action, or the Dean may rule on the issue without such advice.
5. If the Dean decides to rule on the issue without benefit of committee, the investigation and resolution shall take place within 30 days after the written complaint has been received. The student will be notified of the Dean's decision in writing.
6. If the Dean decides to establish a review committee, he/she shall appoint three faculty members who have not taught the student and who are not members of the same department as the faculty member who issued the grade in question. The committee will investigate the matter and notify the student in writing of the decision within 30 days after the complaint is forwarded to the committee.
7. The student, instructor, department chairperson, and committee (if appropriate) shall be instructed that all information and procedures regarding the investigation of the appeal shall be kept confidential.
8. The written appeal by the student, and all information regarding the investigation and resolution of the appeal shall be maintained in the Office of the Vice President for Academic Affairs for five years following the incident.

This procedure will be followed for grade appeals initiated by both undergraduate and graduate students. The Dean of Business Programs will handle appeals requested by students in the Graduate and Professional Studies Program.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Academic Programs](#)
[> Class Attendance](#)
[> The Honor Code](#)

[> Evaluation of Academic Work](#)
[> Grade Appeal](#)
[> **Academic Honors**](#)

ACADEMIC STANDARDS AND INTEGRITY

Academic Honors

In an effort to reinforce its commitment to the intellectual development of students, Averett recognizes those students whose academic performance has been outstanding. These recognitions are described below.

I. Honors Lists

At the conclusion of each regular semester, the University recognizes students who have demonstrated academic excellence by publishing their names on one of three honor rolls. To be included on one of the honor rolls a student must have completed at least 12 semester hours of course work for which quality points are awarded and have achieved at least the minimum grade point average listed below:

President's List	4.00
Dean's List	3.40

II. Honors at Graduation

To be eligible for Latiniate honors at graduation, a student must have completed at least 33 semester hours at Averett for which quality points are earned and have the appropriate cumulative grade point average on work taken at Averett. In addition, all prior academic work of students transferring from another institution will be considered in computing the final grade point average, but no overall average may exceed the one earned by a student at Averett.

Below are the minimum cumulative grade point averages which must be earned for Latiniate honors.

Summa cum laude - a grade point average of 3.80

Magna cum laude - a grade point average of 3.60

Cum laude - a grade point average of 3.40

III. Awards for Honors Students

Averett University Outstanding Religion Major Award is presented each year at Honors Convocation. This award was established by Mr. and Mrs. Bernard Swann.

The **Beazley Scholar Scholarship** is awarded to a junior in the upper 10 percent of his class who has taken at least 30 hours at Averett. Selection is made by the Scholarship Committee. This scholarship was established at each of the seven member institutions of the Virginia College Fund to recognize outstanding students. This scholarship was made possible through a grant from the Beazley Foundation Inc. of Portsmouth, Virginia.

The **Yvonne Stewart Kelly Scholars** are juniors and seniors selected by the University's Scholarship Committee in recognition of outstanding academic achievement. Scholars are named annually at the Fall Convocation. Funds are supplied by the Yvonne Stewart Kelly Unitrust Fund for Scholarships at Averett University which is held by the Virginia Baptist Foundation.

The **Conwell Anderson Foreign Student Book Award** is presented annually at the Fall Convocation to the upper-class international student with the highest grade point average. Preference is given to seniors.

The **Alexander B. Carrington, Jr. Scholarship – Honors Program** was established by The Carrington Charitable Trust. This scholarship is to be awarded to a full-time undergraduate student(s) in the Honors Program to offset educational costs with an emphasis on pre-approved off-campus programs, including study abroad.

The **Elizabeth and James Bustard Distinguished Award** was established at Averett under the provisions of a trust created by the will of Elizabeth B. Bustard. This award is to be made at commencement to one or more graduating seniors selected by the faculty and Board of Trustees, who excel in high ideals of living, in spiritual qualities and in generous service to others, for use in graduate study. Contact the Office of the Dean of Arts and Sciences for information about this scholarship.

The **Mary C. Fugate Scholarship**, established and endowed by Averett University alumnae, is awarded each year to a young woman who best demonstrates those ideals exemplary of the life of former Averett Dean, Mary C. Fugate, which include academic achievement and service to church and society. The recipient is selected by the Scholarship Committee from nominations submitted by the Averett faculty.

The **Virginia Collegium Scholar Award** recognizes outstanding academic performance of students enrolled in the Averett Honors Program. This fund was made possible through gifts to the Virginia College Fund of which Averett University is a member institution.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Academic Programs](#)

[> General Education
Curriculum](#)

[> Academic Standards and
Integrity](#)

[> **Honor Societies**](#)

[> Academic Warning,
Probation, and Suspension](#)

[> General Regulations](#)

HONOR SOCIETIES

I. Alpha Chi

Alpha Chi is a national coeducational society whose purpose is to produce academic excellence and exemplary character among college students and to honor those achieving such distinction. The Virginia Beta Chapter of Alpha Chi was established at Averett in the spring of 1973. The chapter seeks to stimulate a spirit of sound scholarship and devotion to truth in an atmosphere free of intellectual narrowness and personal discrimination. The faculty elects to membership junior and senior candidates of good character who meet the following qualifications:

1. Students must have completed at least 30 semester hours of academic work at Averett University.
2. Juniors must have attained a cumulative grade point average of 3.50 and be in the top 5 percent of their class.
3. Seniors must have attained a cumulative grade point average of 3.40 and be in the top 10 percent of their class.

The total combined grade point average is considered (grade point average at Averett University combined with the grade point average on all previous college work); however, the total combined grade point average may not be above the grade point average earned at Averett University.

II. Alpha Kappa Delta

Alpha Kappa Delta is an international honor society based on superior academic achievement in sociology. Membership is by invitation. The purpose of the society is to promote an interest in the study of sociology, in research of social problems and in other intellectual activities that will lead to improvement in the human condition.

III. Beta Beta Beta

Beta Beta Beta is an honor society for students who have superior academic achievement in biology. The society aims to cultivate a keen interest in the natural sciences, to stimulate an appreciation for biological research, and to promote scholarship.

IV. Alpha Psi Omega

Alpha Psi Omega is a national college dramatic fraternity, membership in which is granted to advanced students in speech and dramatics.

V. Sigma Lambda Epsilon

Sigma Lambda Epsilon is an honor society for students involved in the field of education. Selection for membership is based on outstanding performance both in and out of the classroom. It is designed to recognize accomplishments and provide professional growth for its members.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Academic Programs](#)
[> **Academic Warning, Probation and Suspension**](#)
[> Probation and Suspension Policy for Transfer Students](#)

[> Readmission of Students on Academic Suspension](#)
[> Academic Renewal](#)
[> Withdrawal and Leave of Absence](#)

ACADEMIC WARNING, PROBATION AND SUSPENSION

In order to meet degree requirements, a student must attain a grade point average of 2.00 or C average. The grade point average is determined by dividing the total quality points earned at Averett University by the number of GPA credits. The University maintains a graded policy on academic probation in order to indicate to students at different levels of their work that, unless significant improvement occurs, they will not be able to satisfy graduation requirements. The college determines a student's academic standing as indicated in the following table.

Attempted Hours or Total Hours* (whichever is larger)	Minimum Standards for Continuance		
	Academic Warning	Academic Probation	Considered for Academic Suspension
0-15	1.60 – 1.99	1.00 – 1.59	Less than 1.00
16-30	1.80 – 1.99	1.40 – 1.79	Less than 1.40
31-59	1.90 – 1.99	1.60 – 1.89	Less than 1.60
60- 123+	---	---	Less than 2.00

*Includes hours transferred to Averett University

The Academic Policies Council will review the record of any full-time student who does not pass more than 6 semester hours in a regular semester.

Academic Warning

Any student whose cumulative grade point average at the end of any given semester falls within the stipulated range will receive a letter from the Dean of Arts and Sciences regarding Academic Warning. Academic Warning means that the student's grade point average is below 2.0, but the deficiency is not severe enough to warrant Academic Probation. A notation is not placed on the student's permanent record for Academic Warning.

Academic Probation

Any student whose cumulative grade point average at the end of any given semester falls within the stipulated range will be placed on Academic Probation and will receive a letter from the Dean of Arts and Sciences. A notation stating Academic Probation will be placed on the student's permanent record.

Any student on academic probation may enroll in no more than 13 semester hours in a regular semester (fall or spring) and may be required to participate in an intervention program. Students on Academic Probation may not participate in intercollegiate athletics, drama productions, or serve as an officer in university-recognized student organizations. Only those events which are components of credit courses or which are requirements for majors as noted in the catalog may be exempt.

Considered for Academic Suspension

A student who fails to meet the minimum standards for continuance will be considered for Academic Suspension by the Academic Policies Council. If the Council imposes suspension, the Dean of Arts and Sciences will notify the student of the decision. A notation will appear on the student's permanent record.

Any student who is considered for academic suspension but is continued is governed by the same requirements and/or restrictions described under Academic Probation.

A student who earns at least a 2.30 semester grade point average after completing all attempted coursework for which he or she is registered at the end of the semester shall not be subject to suspension.

Suspension

Decisions regarding academic suspension are made at the end of each full semester. Suspension usually does not become effective until the following full semester. Thus, a student who is suspended at the end of the spring semester may attend the summer sessions in order to improve his/her academic record.

Averett will not accept transfer credits for courses taken while a student is on academic suspension from Averett University.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > Academic Programs
- > Academic Warning, Probation and Suspension
- > **Probation and Suspension Policy for Transfer Students**

- > Readmission of Students on Academic Suspension
- > Academic Renewal
- > Withdrawal and Leave of Absence

**ACADEMIC WARNING, PROBATION AND SUSPENSION
Probation and Suspension Policy for Transfer Students**

Probation and suspension standards for transfer students will be based upon the sum of their transfer credits plus the hours attempted at Averett. The grade point average is based only on credit hours attempted and quality points earned at Averett University. **Course work completed at another college may not be used to improve the grade point average at Averett.**

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > [Academic Programs](#)
- > [Academic Warning, Probation and Suspension](#)
- > [Probation and Suspension Policy for Transfer Students](#)

- > **[Readmission of Students on Academic Suspension](#)**
- > [Academic Renewal](#)
- > [Withdrawal and Leave of Absence](#)

ACADEMIC WARNING, PROBATION AND SUSPENSION

Readmission of Students on Academic Suspension

After one semester of suspension, a student may apply to the University for readmission. This request should be made in writing to the Academic Policies Council in care of the Dean of Arts and Sciences and should include a rationale for being considered for readmission. This letter should reach the University at least six weeks prior to the date sought for readmission. Before making a final decision, the Council may request a personal interview with the student. It should be noted that readmission is neither automatic nor certain. If the student is granted readmission, he/she will be governed by the regulations and degree requirements of the catalog that is current at the time of readmission. If a student is suspended for a second time for academic reasons, he/she will be academically ineligible to return to Averett.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Academic Programs](#)
[> Academic Warning, Probation and Suspension](#)
[> Probation and Suspension Policy for Transfer Students](#)

[> Readmission of Students on Academic Suspension](#)
[> **Academic Renewal**](#)
[> Withdrawal and Leave of Absence](#)

ACADEMIC WARNING, PROBATION AND SUSPENSION

Academic Renewal

Academic renewal is the concept that a student may be relieved from some of the effects of past academic failures. The renewal process is designed to allow the individual to renew confidence and hope regarding his or her academic performance. Averett University offers two areas of academic renewal.

- I. **Course Repeat Option.** A student may repeat a maximum of five courses, substituting the new grade and cancelling the previous hours attempted. The student must accept the grade on the repeated course even if the grade is lower than the prior grade. After repeating five courses, no other course may be repeated unless the student earned a grade of F in a course required for his or her degree. In that case, the course may be repeated, but the previous grade and hours attempted will not be cancelled. Courses from other institutions will not be counted as repeats for courses at Averett.
- II. **Academic Forgiveness.** A student may apply to the Academic Policies Council to have the **entire past post-secondary record** forgiven (or the record prior to an agreed upon date). The record of such courses remains a part of the student's transcript whether courses were taken at Averett University or at another institution. However, the current Averett permanent record will carry the notation that prior courses have been forgiven. Courses completed during the period of time for which forgiveness is granted (regardless of grade) may not be used to fulfill any academic requirements nor will they be computed in the student's grade point average for graduation or for consideration for honors.

The following guidelines govern this policy.

1. Five years must have elapsed since the most recent work to be disregarded was completed.
2. The student must apply in writing for forgiveness stating the point in the prior record beyond which forgiveness is sought.
3. An application will not be considered until a student has completed the equivalent of one semester of course work at Averett University with a 2.50 GPA on a cumulative total of at least twelve semester hours of credit.
4. A student must have selected a major and should submit a letter of support from the chair of the major department.
5. The student's transcript will indicate that the student has been granted academic forgiveness for all academic work undertaken prior to the effective time for forgiveness.
6. The student will be allowed only one academic forgiveness. Should a student who has been granted academic forgiveness reach the point of requiring consideration for suspension, the student shall be suspended and it shall be a final suspension.
7. The student will be allowed to use Course Repeat Options to improve the GPA.
8. All regular academic requirements must be met by the student for graduation.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Academic Programs](#)
[> Academic Warning, Probation and Suspension](#)
[> Probation and Suspension Policy for Transfer Students](#)

[> Readmission of Students on Academic Suspension](#)
[> Academic Renewal](#)
[> **Withdrawal and Leave of Absence**](#)

ACADEMIC WARNING, PROBATION AND SUSPENSION Withdrawal and Leave of Absence

- [Withdrawal](#)
- [Leave of Absence](#)
- [Readmission Process](#)

Withdrawal

Students may request to withdraw from the University at any time during the semester. Such a request should be made through the Office of Student Development.

1. Students withdrawing during the semester with no documented extenuating circumstances will have grades of WP or WF posted to their records based on grades assigned by the faculty. In addition, faculty will verify the student's last date of class attendance and it will be recorded in the Registrar's Office.
2. Students withdrawing during the semester for documented medical reasons may have grades of W posted to their records. The Office of Student Development will review and verify submitted documentation to determine if a medical withdrawal is warranted. In addition, the Office of Student Development will verify the student's last date of class attendance and it will be recorded in the Registrar's Office.
3. Students withdrawing due to extenuating circumstances (e.g., documented medical reasons) may request to remain under the catalog requirements in effect when they first entered Averett. All other students must complete requirements in the catalog that is current when they re-enter Averett.
4. **All** students returning after a withdrawal **must** complete an application for readmission through the Registrar's Office.

Leave of Absence

Students may apply for a leave of absence through the Office of Student Development. A leave of absence may only be granted **before** the beginning of the semester.

1. A leave of absence may be granted for up to one calendar year.
2. A leave of absence is for a complete semester, meaning that a student cannot be granted a leave for a specified semester and then return to take classes within that semester.
3. A leave of absence will not be granted to students suspended, being considered for suspension, or on probation.
4. A student who has been approved for a leave of absence may remain under the catalog requirements in effect when they first entered Averett.
5. All students returning after a leave of absence **must** complete an application for readmission through the Registrar's Office.

Readmission Process

1. All students who have withdrawn or been granted a leave of absence must complete an application for readmission through the Registrar's Office.
2. Students who left in good standing, or with an academic status of "warning" **may** be automatically readmitted and allowed to register for classes.
3. Students whose academic status was "probation," "considered for suspension," or "suspension" will have their application submitted to the Academic Policies Council for review. The Council will make a readmission decision before students are allowed to register for classes.

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> General Regulations](#)
[> Classification of Students](#)
[> Transfer Credits](#)
[> Academic Advising and Registration](#)

[> Credit by Non-Traditional Means](#)
[> Transcripts and Parental Access](#)
[> Non-traditional Education](#)

GENERAL REGULATIONS

Classification of Students

Students at Averett University are classified academically as freshmen, sophomores, juniors, and seniors, based on the number of semester hours earned (see table). They are also classified as full-time or part-time. Full-time students are those who are registered for at least 12 hours in a regular semester or 6 hours in a summer session. Students are also classified as either degree-seeking or special students.

Academic Classification	Semester Hours Earned
Freshman	0-29
Sophomore	30-59
Junior	60-89
Senior	90 or more

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> General Regulations](#)
[> Classification of Students](#)
[> **Transfer Credits**](#)
[> Academic Advising and Registration](#)

[> Credit by Non-Traditional Means](#)
[> Transcripts and Parental Access](#)
[> Non-traditional Education](#)

GENERAL REGULATIONS

Transfer Credits

I. Transfer Students

Students who wish to transfer to Averett from another college must have transcripts of **all** previous college work sent to the Averett University Admissions Office. In order to receive transfer credit for courses completed before matriculating at Averett, a final, official transcript should be received by the end of the first semester of enrollment at Averett. Courses will not be transferred to Averett University while a student is on academic suspension at a previous college.

Students may not enroll at Averett University during the term(s) in which they are on academic suspension at another college.

Averett University will transfer courses for which a grade of C or higher was received, provided such courses are applicable to the Averett University curriculum and the other college is accredited by a regional accrediting agency. For those students who have earned the associate's degree, Averett will accept in transfer all courses which were credited by the transferring institution toward the student's degree.

The one exception to this policy is that Averett does not transfer grades of D in College Composition I or II (or their equivalents). Any student who holds an associate's degree with a D in College Composition I and/or II (or their equivalents) must take ENG 111 and/or ENG 112 at Averett.

Students who transfer from a two-year college must earn 60 hours at a four-year college in order to receive a baccalaureate degree. Thus, if a student transfers 63 hours to Averett from a two-year college, he/she must complete the remainder of his/her work at a four-year college.

Transfer courses in the student's intended major are subject to the approval of the department. If the transfer student selects a minor, he/she must complete a minimum of 6 semester hours in the minor field at Averett.

A student's grade point average for graduation requirements is based only on work taken at Averett University. **When computing grade point averages for determination of honors for graduation or membership in Alpha Chi, grades on all college work are included.**

I. Transfer of Credit from Other Institutions (after enrolling at Averett)

After matriculation at Averett, all students who wish to receive credit for courses taken at another accredited institution must have written approval granted **in advance** by the Associate Dean/Registrar. The written approval must be in the student's file in the Registrar's Office before credit will be given for those courses. Students must earn a grade of C or better in order to receive transfer credit for any course taken at another institution. Grades on courses taken at another institution will not be calculated into the student's grade point average at Averett. Thus, a course taken elsewhere will neither raise nor lower the student's grade point average.

Transfer credit may **not** be used to replace any grade previously earned at Averett.

When the student has earned 90 hours, approval for work to be transferred from another institution will not be granted. The last 33 hours must be taken at Averett.

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

> General Regulations
 > Classification of Students
 > Transfer Credits
 > **Academic Advising and Registration**

> Credit by Non-Traditional Means
 > Transcripts and Parental Access
 > Non-traditional Education

GENERAL REGULATIONS Advising and Registration

- [Academic Advising](#)
- [Registration](#)
- [Course Changes](#)
- [Pass/Fail Option](#)
- [Course Load](#)
- [Summer Sessions](#)

Academic Advising

Upon acceptance to Averett, a student is assigned an academic advisor by the Dean of Arts and Sciences. If he or she has decided upon a major, a member of the faculty of that department will advise the student. If she or he has not decided upon a major, an advisor will be assigned who can provide general academic guidance.

The primary role of the academic advisor is to **guide and assist** the student in planning the program of study in order to meet requirements for graduation. Before registering for classes each semester, the student must make an appointment with his/her advisor to plan the class schedule. **Nevertheless, it is the student's responsibility to be familiar with and to fulfill all requirements for graduation.**

Registration

Registration for classes is held several times during the year. The exact dates and deadlines are published with the class schedules each semester. Students are responsible for knowing and adhering to the published dates and deadlines. A student will not be permitted to register for a term after the add/drop period has ended.

Course Changes

1. Adding a Course

Following registration a student may add courses until the last day to add classes. The exact date of the last day to add classes is printed on the class schedule each semester. The student's academic advisor must sign both the registration form and the add/drop form before either will be processed in the Registrar's Office.

2. Withdrawing From a Course

Following registration a student may drop a course during the first day of fall or spring semester *without a tuition penalty*. Following that date, the student will lose a percentage of tuition as outlined in the [Financial Information Section](#) of this catalog. Students withdrawing from courses in the summer terms must do so before the start of classes in order to receive a full refund.

If a student drops a course during the drop/add period (the first week of the fall or spring semester or the first three days of a summer session), the course will not appear on the student's permanent record. After the drop/add period, a student may withdraw from a class until the last day of classes. If a student withdraws after the drop/add period, but within the first four weeks of the semester (first three days in a summer session), the student will receive a grade of W. After the first four weeks, the instructor will assign a grade of WP if the student is passing the course (which will not affect the GPA), or WF if the student is failing the course. A WF will be averaged into the GPA as an F. The academic advisor will be notified of this action. If extenuating circumstances exist that necessitate a student's withdrawing from school, the withdrawal must be initiated with the Dean of Student Development.

A student who stops attending class and does not officially withdraw from the course according to the guidelines described above will receive a

grade of F in the course. Students are responsible for making sure the appropriate paperwork is turned in to the Registrar's Office.

Pass/Fail Option

Any student may take as many as five courses on a Pass/Fail basis. These courses must be used as free electives. Courses used to satisfy the requirements for General Education, teacher licensure, the major, or the minor may not be taken on a Pass/Fail basis. A student who elects to take a course Pass/Fail must indicate that choice in the Registrar's Office no later than the end of the first week of classes in the fall or spring semester and no later than the third day of a summer session. A student may not revoke the Pass/Fail option after the above-named deadlines.

In computation of grade point averages, courses taken on Pass/Fail are disregarded so that one's grade point average cannot be affected by the mark received on these courses.

Course Load

The normal academic load in the fall or spring semester is 15 to 18 semester hours. A student must enroll for at least 12 semester hours to qualify as a full-time student. Course loads in excess of 18 semester hours must be approved by the Dean of Arts and Sciences or the Registrar. A maximum academic load for a four-week summer session is 6 semester hours. Students who are on academic probation are limited to a maximum of 13 semester hours during the fall or spring semester and to 4 semester hours during the summer terms.

Summer Sessions

Averett offers two four-week summer sessions, beginning in May and continuing through July. The normal course load for a student is 6 semester hours during each of the four-week sessions.

For more information on the summer sessions, contact the Dean of Arts and Sciences or the Registrar.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> General Regulations](#)
[> Classification of Students](#)
[> Transfer Credits](#)
[> Academic Advising and Registration](#)

[> Credit by Non-Traditional Means](#)
[> Transcripts and Parental Access](#)
[> Non-traditional Education](#)

GENERAL REGULATIONS

Credit by Non-Traditional Means

Averett University allows students to gain academic credit by following a number of avenues other than the traditional college class experience.

CLEP

College credit may be earned through both the general examinations and the subject examinations of the College Level Examination Program. The five general examinations cover the areas of English composition, mathematics, natural sciences, history, and humanities.

The five general examinations, the Averett equivalent course, the number of semester hours awarded and the acceptable scores are listed below. Averett University follows the American Council on Education guidelines in awarding credit for the CLEP examinations.

General Examination	Averett Equivalent	Hours	Acceptable Score
English Composition	English 111* (with essay)	3	50
Humanities	Fine Arts	6	50
Mathematics	Math 103	3	50
Natural Sciences	Natural Sciences**	6	50
Social Studies & History	His. 101 & 102	6	50

Each subject examination is equal to 3 or 6 hours credit (depending on whether the material is designed to measure a one-course or a two-course sequence). In the subject examinations, credit is awarded only in those areas applicable to the Averett University curriculum.

Any student who completes a degree at Averett must complete the last 33 semester hours of classwork at this institution, which means that 90 semester hours may be accumulated through credit by examination, CLEP, or transfer.

After matriculating at Averett, the student will pay one-third the prevailing tuition rate for any credit through CLEP. The CLEP examinations are administered through the Office of Financial Aid. Contact that office for more information. (Note: these policies do not apply to CLEP taken before matriculation.)

*The English Department requires the Multiple Choice **with Essay** Test. The CLEP subject exam, College Composition, will also be accepted for credit for English 111 or the subject exam, Freshman English, for credit for English 111 & 112. The essays for these English tests must be sent to Averett University for evaluation in order for credit to be awarded.

**Will satisfy a Natural Science general education requirement.

Credit by Examination

For credit by examination, other than CLEP or Advanced Placement Tests, the student must consult the individual department. If the department approves an examination, it will design challenge examinations related to the specific course requested. The examination must be approved by every member of the department. For credit by examination, a \$25 non-refundable, administrative fee will be assessed. If credit is awarded, the student will pay one-half the prevailing tuition rate. The administrative fee will be deducted from the tuition charge.

Military Credit

Averett may grant credit for military service, provided the term served is a minimum of one year. Credit is based on the recommendations of the American Council on Education Guides. This credit

is evaluated on the basis of senior college credit.

Non-Collegiate Learning Experience

Averett University may grant credit for course work taken under the auspices of certain businesses and industries provided those courses are recommended for credit by the American Council on Education. Students may wish to develop a portfolio demonstrating their prior learning to be evaluated to determine if credit will be granted.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

- > General Regulations
- > Classification of Students
- > Transfer Credits
- > Academic Advising and Registration

- > Credit by Non-Traditional Means
- > **Transcripts and Parental Access**
- > Non-traditional Education

GENERAL REGULATIONS

Transcripts

The University maintains a permanent academic record on each student who enters Averett, a certified copy of which is available upon written request to the Registrar's Office. There is no fee for the issuance of a transcript.

Neither grade reports nor transcripts will be issued to students until all charges have been paid, including tuition, library fines, and bookstore charges.

Parental Access to Student Records

Averett University assumes all traditional undergraduate students to be dependent on their parents; therefore, parents have access to student grades, schedules, transcripts, housing records, judicial records, and directory information. Grade reports will be sent to students at their permanent (home) address.

A student who wishes to be treated as an independent must apply for independent status by completing and filing the appropriate form with the Registrar's Office. Upon submission of the completed form, the student's grades and records will be available only to him/her.

Parents of students who have declared themselves as independent may gain access to student records and grades only by demonstrating to the University that the student is considered a dependent under the IRS code.

All graduate and non-traditional students will be treated as independent. Non-traditional students are students 23 years of age or older.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> General Regulations](#)
[> Classification of Students](#)
[> Transfer Credits](#)
[> Academic Advising and Registration](#)

[> Credit by Non-Traditional Means](#)
[> Transcripts and Parental Access](#)
[> **Non-traditional Education**](#)

GENERAL REGULATIONS

Non-traditional Education

Averett attempts to create a learning environment accessible to all citizens who feel they can benefit by attending the University. This environment is created by offering courses to students of all ages, on campus and off campus, using a variety of delivery systems.

I. Graduate and Professional Studies (GPS)

This nontraditional program, designed for working adults, offers courses of study leading to the Associate of Science in Business, the Bachelor of Business Administration and the Master of Business Administration degrees. Courses are offered at sites throughout the Commonwealth of Virginia, including Northern Virginia, Richmond, Tidewater and Southern Virginia, and in North Carolina. These programs are described in detail in a separate catalog. Information about these programs is available from the office of the Dean of Graduate and Professional Studies.

II. Individually Developed Education for Adult Learners (IDEAL)

The IDEAL Program permits adult students who cannot enroll in a structured education curriculum the opportunity to develop, with assistance from an academic advisor, a program tailored to their own schedules and backgrounds. Students in this program may earn credits through attendance in regular classes, through distance education programs from accredited institutions, or through completion of Averett University independent study courses.

Independent study courses involve a one-on-one academic experience with a faculty member. Students communicate directly with their faculty through a variety of modes, which may include fax, phone, e-mail, voice mail, audio and videotapes, and print media. Course requirements are completed on an individual basis in accordance with the student's schedule.

PROGRAMS

IDEAL offers four major curriculum areas: Criminal Justice, Sociology, Physical Education: Sport Management, and the Bachelor of Applied Science degree. Other majors may be arranged based on availability of courses and the flexibility of the student's schedule.

REQUIREMENTS FOR GRADUATION

The basic requirements for an undergraduate degree from Averett University are a minimum of 123 semester hours of credit with at least a 2.00 grade point average on all work attempted as well as on courses to complete the major. Other specific requirements are listed below:

1. Students must satisfactorily complete all Core General Education requirements.
2. Students must achieve satisfactory completion of a specified major area of study.
3. Students must satisfy competencies in writing, oral communication, technology, and knowledge of other cultures.
4. Of the 123 semester hours credit, at least 60 must be taken from courses outside the major field.
5. At least 33 hours of academic work must be taken at Averett University.
6. Transfer students must satisfactorily complete a minimum of 12 semester hours in the major field at Averett University.
7. Students who are first admitted to Averett University as special students must earn a minimum of 30 semester hours of credit after obtaining degree-seeking status.

8. Students must file an application for graduation with the Registrar's Office by the designated date in the semester in which graduation is planned. Appropriate forms are available during registration for fall semester classes, or a student may apply directly to the Registrar's Office.
9. Students must have completed all requirements for graduation in order to participate in commencement exercises.
10. Students must have met all financial obligations to the University in order to participate in graduation. All tuition, fees, fines, bookstore charges and other bills must be paid in full prior to participating in graduation.

STUDENT SERVICES

Averett University recognizes the importance of counseling and professional assistance for student success. For students enrolled in the IDEAL Program, this is of particular importance. Students are assigned an advisor who helps them develop the degree program. This advisor acts as the primary point of contact for the student when dealing with non-academic issues and course enrollment.

COST

See [Financial Information](#) for a list of tuition and fees for the IDEAL Program.

SCHOLARSHIP

In recognition of the service that the military provides to this nation, Averett University offers a special scholarship for all military members (active or reserve), Department of Defense civilian employees, state National Guard employees, and their family members. This scholarship is available for all degree programs statewide and provides a 25% tuition reduction for students enrolled on a full-time basis.

TUITION ASSISTANCE

Averett University will accept tuition assistance from any of the military services. For IDEAL independent study courses, this includes tuition assistance/reimbursement available through DANTES.

SOC MEMBERSHIP

As a member of Servicemember Opportunity Colleges, Averett University has several policies that support military members. These include:

- Liberal Credit Transfer from other colleges and universities
- Acceptance of standardized examinations
 - College Level Exam Program
 - DANTES Subject Standardized Tests
 - Regents College Exam

CREDIT TRANSFER

Averett University will accept in transfer coursework and credit from most accredited sources. Course credit is transcribed upon enrollment in a degree program. Military credit is accepted from:

- Military Training Courses
- Occupational Specialty
- Service College

LOCATIONS

The IDEAL Program is designed to be fully portable. Courses can be completed wherever and whenever the student chooses. IDEAL students may also participate in courses offered at more than 60 sites throughout Virginia, North Carolina, and the District of Columbia. Approval of specific courses must be obtained from your advisor prior to enrollment. For information concerning the IDEAL Program, contact the Director of the IDEAL Program.

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

- > Aeronautics (AV)
- > Art (ART)
- > Biology (BIO)
- > Business Administration (BSA)
- > Chemistry (CH)
- > Church Ministries
- > Computer Science (CSS)
- > Criminal Justice (CRJ)
- > Economics (ECO)
- > Education (ED)
- > English (ENG)
- > English/History (Pre-Law)
- > Environmental Sciences (ENS)
- > Equestrian Studies (ES)
- > French (FR)
- > Greek (GRK)
- > Health (HTH)
- > Hebrew (HEB)
- > History (HIS)
- > History and Politics
- > Honors Program (HON)
- > Human-Computer Interaction Program (HCI)
- > Interdisciplinary Studies (IDS)
- > Journalism (JR)
- > Leadership Studies (LDR)
- > Mathematics (MTH)
- > Medical Technology
- > Music (MUS)
- > Philosophy (PHL)
- > Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science (PE)
- > Physical Science (PSC)
- > Political Science (POS)
- > Pre-Law
- > Psychology (PSY)
- > Religion (REL)
- > Sociology (SOC)
- > Spanish (SPA)
- > Theatre (TH)

DEGREE PROGRAMS

Degree Requirements

Listed in this section are the requirements for each major offered at Averett. Any adjustment in these requirements must be approved by the Department Chair and the Dean of Arts and Sciences. The requirements described here are in addition to the [General Education requirements](#). A student may, however, meet some of the General Education requirements automatically through the completion of the selected area of concentration.

Some programs have special admission requirements. Admission to the University does not guarantee admission to any specific degree program.

Courses

Course numbers indicate the general level at which the course is taught. Courses at the 300- and 400-levels are designed primarily for juniors and seniors. Credit for courses appears in the parentheses and is indicated in semester hours.

A comma between course numbers means that the first course is a prerequisite to the second but that credit may be received for the first semester without taking the second semester.

Generally, the credit indicates the number of hours the class meets each week. For a three semester hour course, Monday, Wednesday, and Friday classes meet for 55 minutes each session; Tuesday and Thursday classes meet 1 hour and 25 minutes each session.

The University reserves the right to add courses or to omit courses as necessary. The [official schedule of classes](#) is posted on the university website (www.averett.edu) prior to the beginning of each semester.

Special Studies, Independent Studies, and Tutorials

From time to time **special courses** are offered which make available to students areas of study not included in the regular course offerings. The department which offers the course gives it a title which is used in the official schedule of classes and on student records. Because content will vary, special studies courses may be repeated for credit.

199 and 299

Special Studies

(1-3)

Open to freshmen, sophomores, juniors, and seniors.

Open to juniors and seniors.

Independent Study (Non-catalog Courses)

Independent study courses (numbered 490) are individually designed learning experiences normally open only to juniors and seniors. The independent study allows students to explore academic interests **not** provided by the existing curriculum. The student undertaking an independent study is guided and evaluated by a qualified member of the faculty.

The plan for an independent study project must be completed with the instructor and academic advisor and approved by the Dean of Arts and Sciences prior to registration. Students must turn in the completed independent study form with the registration form before their registration will be processed. Forms for submitting independent studies are available in the Registrar's Office.

Tutorials (Independent Study for Catalog Courses)

Tutorials are courses which are listed in the catalog but are taken on a tutorial or independent basis. Students may request a tutorial during a semester in which the course is not offered **if** the course is required for graduation and **if** it will not be offered again before the student graduates. The student's registration should show the catalog number and title with a section designation of "I". Prior permission of the Dean of Arts and Sciences is required in order to register for a catalog course on a tutorial or independent basis.

Internships may be taken on a tutorial or independent basis with approval from the advisor and instructor if the student has a cumulative grade point average of 2.00 or better.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > **Aeronautics**
- > Courses of Instruction
- > Core Requirements
- > Aviation Business
- > Aviation Technical Systems

- > Flight Operations
- > Aviation Maintenance Operations
- > Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice Program

AERONAUTICS

Barbara Baron
 Charles Martell, B.S., M.A.
 Walter Penn III, B.A., J.D.
 Thomas Vick, B.S., J.D., *Chair*

MAJOR IN AEROSPACE MANAGEMENT

The Department of Aeronautics prepares graduates who are academically, ethically, and professionally prepared to accept the relevant leadership challenges of the current and future aviation industry.

The Department of Aeronautics offers a highly challenging and rigorous undergraduate degree in the Bachelor of Arts (BA) and Bachelor of Science (BS) in Aerospace Management with fields of concentration in Flight Operations, Aviation Business, Aviation Technical Systems, and Aviation Maintenance Operations. The Program also offers a joint major in Aerospace Management and Criminal Justice. The Program includes at least 53 hours of general education courses to assure that a student is professionally well-rounded.

In addition, the Department of Aeronautics offers flight courses for academic credit to all interested Averett University students who are not on University or other academic disciplinary action, and meet departmental requirements and policies. The Flight Center offers training for the following Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) certificates: private, commercial and flight instructor pilot, as well as training for the FAA ratings for instrument, multi-engine, instrument instructor and multi-engine instructor. A student seeking an FAA certificate or rating through the Department of Aeronautics must successfully complete the courses pertinent to the desired certification at the Flight Center prior to graduation.

Policies

Safety is a preeminent concern of the Department of Aeronautics and the Federal Aviation Administration. The FAA also specifically mandates high grade and attendance standards that must be met by students in all ground and flight courses. Aviation professionals also have the highest behavioral and medical standards in any industry. The Department of Aeronautics reflects its commitment to these high professional standards within the aviation industry. The department faculty and staff insist that all students conduct themselves in a responsible and professional manner.

All students are required to study and be well prepared prior to all academic and flight classes. Consequently, students must maintain a minimum annual grade point average in courses in the major. This departmental requirement is in addition to other University academic policies.

A first year student receiving a D, F or WF in one course in the major will be placed on departmental probation. A first year student receiving a second D, F, or WF in the major will not be permitted to continue to major in Aerospace Management. The student also may not enroll in other courses in the major.

Upperclass or transfer students may not receive any grades of D, F, or WF in courses in the major or the student will not be permitted to continue to major in Aerospace Management. The student also may not enroll in other courses in the major.

Any student who does not conform to these high expectations may be placed on probation



or suspension, or be administratively withdrawn or dismissed from the major, if in the judgment of the Chair, such action is believed to be necessary.

Drug and Alcohol Prevention Program

While in the Aerospace Management Program, students will be part of the Drug and Alcohol Prevention Program. As in the aerospace industry "no tolerance" environment, the department's goal is to use education and deterrence to assure a safe and secure training environment.

The program is similar to mandatory drug and alcohol testing conducted in the industry. All students enrolled in the Aerospace Management Program are subject to random or "for cause" drug testing during their enrollment. Additional drug and alcohol testing will be done for several reasons. Tests can be ordered as an initial screening, directed at an individual based on his/her behavior, speech, odor or other characteristics, inconclusive test results, or be done as a result of an aviation-related accident or incident. Any confirmed use of illegal drugs or chronic abuse of alcohol is cause for immediate suspension from any safety or security sensitive courses.

Drug, alcohol, and other legal convictions, or positive drug and alcohol test results, or results from certain judicial or University administrative actions are considered serious problems by the Federal government and the aviation industry. These can severely and adversely impact the student trying to obtain FAA certificates or a mandatory security background clearance in order to obtain professional employment in the aviation industry.

FacilitiesThe Department of Aeronautics is located on the main campus and offers academic instruction and advising. The Flight Center is located at Danville Regional Airport, a short distance from campus. Students should be prepared to provide their own transportation to and from the Flight Center.

Degree Requirements

Students enrolled in the Department of Aeronautics program must complete 123 credits as outlined in the appropriate curriculum prior to graduation. 60 credits must be completed at a senior institution with the last 33 credits from Averett University.

Deviation from the recommended program may be made only with a written request from the student and with the written approval of the appropriate departmental chair.

As part of the 123 credits, the student is required to take the Aerospace core requirements.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Aeronautics](#)

> [Courses of Instruction](#)

> **Core Requirements**

> [Aviation Business](#)

> [Aviation Technical Systems](#)

> [Flight Operations](#)

> [Aviation Maintenance Operations](#)

> [Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice Program](#)

AERONAUTICS

Core Requirements for All Concentrations in Aerospace Management:

		Semester Hours
AV 102	Introduction to the Aerospace Industry	3
AV 202	Aerospace Safety	3
AV 244	Aerospace Regulatory Process	3
AV 316	Aerospace Transportation	3
AV 401	Airport Management	<u>3</u>
	Total -	15

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Aeronautics](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Core Requirements](#)
[> **Aviation Business**](#)
[> Aviation Technical Systems](#)

[> Flight Operations](#)
[> Aviation Maintenance Operations](#)
[> Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice Program](#)

AERONAUTICS Concentration in Aviation Business

For the concentration in Aviation Business, the student is required to take the [Aerospace core requirements](#) in addition to 15 credits of Aerospace electives (selected from the following list and special courses) and the 30 credits in Business Administration listed below. This concentration requires 60 credits in Aerospace and Business Administration courses.

		Semester Hours
AV 216	National Airspace System	3
AV 265	Aerospace Accident Investigation	3
AV 275	General Aviation Management	3
AV 285	Aviation Security Operations	3
AV 311	Aerospace Law	3
AV 331	Airline Management	3
AV 365	Human Factors in the Aerospace Industry	3
AV 401	Airport Management	3
AV 425	Airport Planning and Design	3
AV 472	Internship in the Aerospace Industry	1-12
AV 475	Aviation Management Topics	3
AV 480	Airline Business Strategy Simulation	3
	Total	15

Required Business Administration Courses:

		Semester Hours
BSA 221	Principles of Accounting I	3
BSA 222	Principles of Accounting II	3
BSA 305	Principles of Management	3
BSA 310	Principles of Marketing	3
BSA elective courses		6
CSS 113	Microcomputers and Application Software	3
CSS 203	Introduction to Statistics	3
ECO 201	Principles of Microeconomics	3
ECO 202	Principles of Macroeconomics	3
	Total	30

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)

[> Aeronautics](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Core Requirements](#)
[> Aviation Business](#)
[> **Aviation Technical Systems**](#)

[> Flight Operations](#)
[> Aviation Maintenance Operations](#)
[> Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice Program](#)

AERONAUTICS

Concentration in Aviation Technical Systems

This concentration is a response to the changing nature and growing demand within the aviation industry for technically oriented employees with a background in aeronautics, computer science, and mathematics. In addition, the concentration permits students to apply for advanced studies in engineering.

Requirements for Aviation Technical Systems

For this concentration, students must complete core requirements in Aeronautics, Computer Science, and Mathematics. The Department of Aeronautics policies are applied to this concentration.

In addition to General Education requirements, students must complete:

CSS 235

	Semester Hours
AV 102 Introduction to Aerospace Industry	3
AV 202 Aerospace Safety	3
AV 244 Aerospace Regulatory Process	3
AV 316 Aerospace Transportation	3
AV 401 Airport Management	3
AV elective 200 level or above	3
CSS 113 Microcomputers & Application Software	3
CSS 211 Introduction to Programming I	4
CSS 212 Programming II	
or CSS 231 Programming in C++	
or CSS 235 Programming in Java	4
CSS elective 200 level or above	3-4
MTH 201 Calculus I	3
MTH 202 Calculus II	3
MTH 211 Foundations of Higher Mathematics	3
MTH 301 Calculus III	3
CSS or MTH electives 300-400 level	9
Total Concentration 53-54	

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Aeronautics](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Core Requirements](#)
[> Aviation Business](#)
[> Aviation Technical Systems](#)

[> **Flight Operations**](#)
[> Aviation Maintenance Operations](#)
[> Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice Program](#)

AERONAUTICS

Concentration in Flight Operations

Averett University flight training is conducted under the provisions of Federal Aviation Regulations Parts 141 and 61. All flight instructors have the appropriate FAA certificates and experience.

The student also is required to earn at least an FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with an Instrument rating. A student must further complete either Option A – Flight Instructor Certificate or Option B – Multi-Engine Rating. Qualified students enrolled in this concentration will also be able to select any or all of the other flight courses as electives.

All flight courses may begin and end at any time during the academic semester and may not coincide with the beginning and ending dates of the published semester schedule. Students who begin a flight course late in the semester should be prepared to complete that flight course during the next published semester.

Flight fees are in addition to the regular university tuition. The flight rates and charges are based on a reasonable number of hours required to meet the minimum hours contained in the specific FAA-approved flight training syllabus. Additional flight and ground training charges may be required for students not making satisfactory progress or due to other factors such as weather, illness, weight restriction, maintenance, selection of different training aircraft, etc. The costs for all additional flight and ground training are in addition to the regular flight course fees. Fees are assessed also for taking the FAA Knowledge and Practical tests.

Transfer of Flight Training

The Department of Aeronautics welcomes transfer students from other colleges and universities, and every effort is made to transfer the maximum number of credits subject to Federal Aviation Regulations and University policies. It is the responsibility of the student to initiate a review process of transfer flight training with the Chief Flight Instructor. Advanced standing for flight training may be granted only after the student is enrolled, and after the Chief Flight Instructor completes the evaluation process, which will include a logbook review and proficiency evaluation flights. Transfer students may receive college credit for previous flight and ground training at the discretion of the department chair.

Students enrolled in any flight courses should not expect to take any flight training for credit outside the Department of Aeronautics facilities after enrollment at Averett University.

Medical Examinations

Students seeking admission to flight training must be examined by an FAA-designated aviation medical examiner and have an FAA medical certificate prior to the start of flight training. The Department of Aeronautics strongly recommends that the student initially obtains an FAA Class I medical certificate to assure that the student meets the professional pilot medical standards prior to undertaking flight training. The FAA medical examinations should be done far enough in advance of entering Averett University to assure that all potential problems or questions are resolved.

Non-Owners Aircraft Insurance Liability Coverage

In order to assure adequate individual and family needs are met through insurance coverage, Averett University requires all flight students to acquire non-owners aircraft rental insurance after obtaining their FAA Private Pilot certificate.

Flight Operations Requirements

For the concentration in Flight Operations, the student is required to take the Aerospace core requirements in addition to 15 credits of flight courses and either Option A or Option B below.

		Semester Hours
AV 112	Private Pilot Ground School	3
AV 113	Private Pilot Flight I	1
AV 114	Private Pilot Flight II	1
AV 210	Instrument Ground School	3
AV 220	Instrument Flight I	1
AV 221	Instrument Flight II	1
AV 300	Commercial Ground School	3
AV 320	Commercial Flight I	1
AV 321	Commercial Flight II	<u>1</u>
	Total	15

Available Options in the Flight Operations Concentration:**Option A:**

AV 441	Flight Instructor Ground School	3
AV 440	Flight Instructor Flight	1
AV 457	Flight Instructor Practicum (P/F)	<u>2</u>
	Total	6

Option B:

AV 443	Multi-Engine Ground School	1
AV 442	Multi-Engine Flight	<u>1</u>
	Total	2

Option C:

AV 444	Instrument Flight Instructor Ground School	2
AV 445	Instrument Flight Instructor Flight	<u>1</u>
	Total	3

Option D:

AV 446	Multi-Engine Flight Instructor Flight	3
--------	---------------------------------------	---

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

- > Aeronautics
- > Courses of Instruction
- > Core Requirements
- > Aviation Business
- > Aviation Technical Systems

- > Flight Operations
- > **Aviation Maintenance Operations**
- > Aerospace Management/
Criminal Justice Program

AERONAUTICS

Concentration in Aviation Maintenance Operations

Prospective students must have advanced standing. Each student must have earned their FAA Airframe and Powerplant certificate or build upon completed technical training or education gained from other accredited post-secondary colleges or universities or military training elsewhere prior to being admitted to the Averett University Aeronautics Program. No other FAA certificates will be accepted for admission into this concentration. The maximum number of credits granted for the FAA A&P certificate earned only through work experience is 30 credits.

Averett University also will accept for advance standing students who have completed an accredited training program in Avionics. The maximum number of credits granted for the Avionics training is 30 credits.

Students seeking advanced standing must submit the appropriate FAA and other documentation to substantiate the certificates and all official transcripts of all previous high school and college courses completed at an accredited institution to the Averett University Admissions Office.

Students enrolled in the Aviation Maintenance Operations concentration must complete the required Aerospace core courses and an additional 15 credits in Aerospace or Business Administration electives.

60 credits must be completed at a senior institution with the last 33 credits from Averett University.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Aeronautics](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Core Requirements](#)
[> Aviation Business](#)
[> Aviation Technical Systems](#)

[> Flight Operations](#)
[> Aviation Maintenance Operations](#)
[> **Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice Program**](#)

AERONAUTICS

Requirements for Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice Program:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

		Semester Hours
AV 102	Introduction to the Aerospace Industry	3
AV 112	Private Pilot Ground School.	3
AV 113	Private Pilot Flight I	1
AV 114	Private Pilot Flight II	1
AV 202	Aerospace Safety	3
AV 210	Instrument Ground School	3
AV 220	Instrument Flight I	1
AV 221	Instrument Flight II	1
AV 244	Aerospace Regulatory Process	3
AV 300	Commercial Ground School	3
AV 316	Aerospace Transportation	3
AV 320	Commercial Flight I	1
AV 321	Commercial Flight II	1
AV 401	Airport Management	<u>3</u>
	Total	30

Plus Option A

AV 440	Flight Instructor Flight	1
AV 441	Flight Instructor Ground School	3
AV 457	Flight Instructor Practicum	<u>2</u>
	Total	6

Or Option B

AV 442	Multi-Engine Flight	1
AV 443	Multi-Engine Ground School	<u>1</u>
	Total	2

Criminal Justice Requirements:

SOC 216	Criminology	3
	or	
CRJ 301	Criminal Justice	
SOC 470	Research Methods	3
CRJ 440	Seminar in Criminal Justice	
	or	
CRJ 445	Criminal Justice Internship	
	or	
CRJ 302	Criminal Procedure	3
SOC/CRJ	Electives (300-400 level)	<u>15</u>
	Total	24

The student must take a minimum of 12 credits of Criminal Justice courses at the 300-400 level. These 12 credits may include those courses specified in the degree requirements listed above.

A Sociology or Criminal Justice Research Project is required. This is a substantial research paper involving original research. CRJ 440, SOC 445, CRJ 445, or CRJ 302 will meet these requirements. Also, an independent study with guidance by a full-time department faculty member with the goal of producing an original quantitative or qualitative research paper will meet this requirement.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Art](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> Art Major with a Teaching License](#)
[> Human-Computer Interaction Program](#)



ART (ART)

Ms. Diane P. Kendrick, *Chair*
 Mr. Robert C. Marsh

The University offers a liberal arts program with a range of studio work as well as basic study in art history for the student interested in a Bachelor of Arts degree or Bachelor of Arts degree with certification to teach.

The Bachelor of Arts degree prepares students for continued study or potential positions in galleries, commercial art, or in community arts organizations.

Students in the Bachelor of Arts program are encouraged to build a balanced background in the visual arts rather than to concentrate in a single studio area.

Students who are art majors will be required to attend two portfolio assessments while enrolled in the program. The first will take place after the student has completed twelve to fifteen hours of studio work near the end of the sophomore year. The second portfolio assessment will take place the fall semester of the senior year.

All art majors are required to exhibit in the annual student show which exhibits work from studio courses.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

Requirements for a Major in Art:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ART 100 The Visual Arts	3
ART 110 Basic Drawing	3
ART 120 Basic Color and Design	3
ART 130 Three-Dimensional Design	3
Art History (select from: ART 201, 205, 305, 306, 405)	9
Studio	
ART 223 Painting or	3

ART 310	Drawing	
ART 283	General Crafts or	3
ART 330	Sculpture	
ART 340	Graphics	3
Advanced Studio (select from the following)		9
ART 223	Painting	
ART 270	Applied Design or	
ART 351	Applied Three-Dimensional Design	
ART 283	General Crafts or	
ART 383	Advanced Crafts	
ART 310	Drawing	
ART 323	Advanced Painting	
ART 330	Sculpture or	
ART 430	Advanced Sculpture	
ART 440	Advanced Graphics	
ART 362	Pottery or	
ART 462	Advanced Pottery	
ART 450	Special Studies in Art	
ART 490	Independent Study	
ART 400	Senior Seminar	<u>3</u>
		Total 42

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Art**

Freshman Year:

ART 100, Visual Arts
 ART 110, Basic Drawing
 ART 120, Basic Color and Design

Sophomore Year:

ART 130, Three-Dimensional Design
 ART 201, Art History (or 205)
 ART 223, Painting (or 310)

Junior Year:

ART Recommended Elective
 ART 283, General Crafts (or 330)
 ART 305, Art History (or 306)
 ART Recommended Elective

Senior Year:

ART 305, Art History (or 306 or 405)
 ART 340, Graphics (or 440)
 ART Recommended Elective
 ART 400, Senior Seminar

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Art](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> **Minor**](#)

[> Art Major with a Teaching License](#)
[> Human-Computer Interaction Program](#)

ART (ART) Minor

A student may choose to minor either in Studio Art or Art History. The following are the requirements for a minor in Studio Art: ART 100, 110, 120, 130, and 6 additional hours selected from ART 223, 270, 283, 310, 330, 340, 351, or 362, for a total of 18 semester hours.

Courses for a minor in Art History are: ART 100 and 400 and 12 hours selected from ART 201, 205, 305, 306, 405 for a total of 18 semester hours. A student may **not** minor in studio art or art history if he/she is an art major.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)[> Art](#)[> Courses of Instruction](#)[> Minor](#)[> Art Major with a Teaching License](#)[> Human-Computer Interaction Program](#)**ART (ART)****Requirements for a Major in Art with a Teaching License:
Grades PK-12**

		Semester Hours
ART 100	The Visual Arts	3
ART 110	Basic Drawing	3
ART 120	Basic Color and Design	3
ART 130	Three-Dimensional Design	3
ART 201	Art History: Ancient Through Medieval	3
ART 205	Art History: Medieval Through Renaissance	3
ART 223	Painting	3
ART 283	General Crafts	3
ART 300	Methods in Art Education I (professional course)	3
ART 301	Methods in Art Education II (practicum)	3
ART 305	Art History: Baroque Through Romanticism or	
ART 306	Realism Through Modern or	
ART 405	Non-Western Art	
ART 310	Drawing	3
ART 330	Sculpture	3
ART 340	Graphics	3
ART 362	Pottery	3
ART 400	Senior Seminar	3
	Total	48

Teacher Licensure in Art includes all grade levels (PK-12). Other [General Education](#) and [Professional Education](#) requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license.

**Sample Four-Year Sequence:
Art with a Teaching License****Freshman Year:**

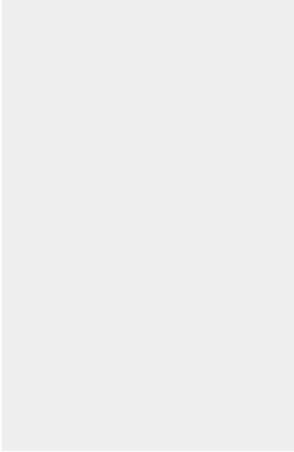
ART 100, Visual Arts
 ART 110, Basic Drawing
 ART 120, Basic Color and Design
 TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication

Sophomore Year:

ART 130, Three-Dimensional Design
 ART 201, Art History: Ancient Through Medieval
 ART 223, Painting
 ED 290, Foundations of Education
 HIS 201, U.S. History I (or 202)
 HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems
 PE Fitness Course
 PSY 205, Developmental Psychology

Junior Year:

ART 330, Sculpture
 ART 205, Art History: Medieval Through Renaissance
 ART 283, General Crafts
 ART 305, Art History: Baroque Through Romanticism (or 306)
 ART 310, Drawing
 ART 300, Methods in Art Education I
 ED 322, Education Psychology
 ED 334, Content Area Reading and Language Development
 PHL 150, Introduction to Philosophy (or 210)
 ED 378, Curriculum in Grades PK-6



ED 379, Teaching Assistant: Grades PK-6
Senior Year:
ART 340, Graphics
ART 362, Pottery
ART 400, Senior Seminar
ART 301, Methods in Art Education II
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education
ED 489, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Secondary/PK-12 Education

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Art](#)
> [Courses of Instruction](#)
> [Minor](#)

> [Art Major with a Teaching License](#)
> **[Human-Computer Interaction Program](#)**

ART (ART)
Human-Computer Interaction Program

Averett University offers a HCI program for students who choose art, computer science/mathematics, computer information systems, or psychology as their primary major. The program is administered by the department of psychology in consultation with an advisory committee composed of faculty members drawn from each of the contributing departments. See [Human-Computer Interaction](#) for a description of the program.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> **Biology**
 > Courses of Instruction
 > Core Requirements for All
 Biology Majors
 > Minor

> Ecology/Environmental
 Biology
 > Biomedical Sciences
 > Radiologic Technology
 > Biology with a Teaching
 License



BIOLOGY (BIO)

Dr. James S. Caldwell
 Dr. Edward W. Fisher, *Chair*
 Ms. Laura Meder

A student who chooses a major in Biology may elect either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree. The student may choose a concentration in **Ecology/Environmental Biology**, consisting of 39 semester hours in Biology/Environmental Science courses and 12 semester hours in Chemistry, or a concentration in **Biomedical Sciences**, consisting of 35 semester hours in Biology and 16 semester hours in Chemistry/Physics. Alternatively, a student desiring to major in Biology, but not desiring to select one of the two concentrations, may consult with the Chair of the Biology Department and design a course of study with the student's career goals in mind. The proposed course sequence must be approved by the Biology faculty. This plan should be submitted as early as possible since some courses are not offered each year.

A degree in Biology will prepare the student for career opportunities in graduate study, professional schools, teaching, or in scientific research with government agencies, academic institutions or in various health fields. It is our goal to provide the best possible foundation upon which the student can build in the chosen area of concentration.

All students must attain a minimum grade point average of 2.50 for all major courses taken at Averett University in the declared major in order to graduate. These major courses include all required for the degree, as well as all taken as electives in Biology, Environmental Sciences and Chemistry and General College Physics I and II.

All seniors will take a **comprehensive examination** administered by the faculty of the department. The subject matter for the exam will encompass all core required courses for the degree and will be taken in the first semester of their senior year. The student is required to make 65 out of a possible 90 points to pass. Students not passing the exam will be given an opportunity to repeat the exam. Given the timing of the exam, all core courses should be completed before the senior year.

Any student who does not pass the comprehensive examination or who fails to meet the minimum grade point average of 2.50 may remain in the program until these criteria are

met, providing the minimum requirements of the University are maintained.

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

- > Biology
- > Courses of Instruction
- > **Core Requirements for All Biology Majors**
- > Minor

- > Ecology/Environmental Biology
- > Biomedical Sciences
- > Radiologic Technology
- > Biology with a Teaching License

BIOLOGY (BIO)

Core Requirements for All Majors:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

		Semester Hours
BIO 101	Introduction to Biology	4
BIO 102	General Botany and/or*	4
BIO 103	General Zoology	4
BIO 203	Genetics	4
BIO 301	Microbiology	4
CH 101,102	General Chemistry	<u>8</u>
		Total 24-28

*BIO 101 is required for all majors. BIO 102 **and** BIO 103 are required for the concentration in Ecology/Environmental Biology. Only BIO 103 is required for the concentration in Biomedical Sciences.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > [Biology](#)
- > [Courses of Instruction](#)
- > [Core Requirements for All
Biology Majors](#)
- > **Minor**

- > [Ecology/Environmental
Biology](#)
- > [Biomedical Sciences](#)
- > [Radiologic Technology](#)
- > [Biology with a Teaching
License](#)

BIOLOGY (BIO) Minor

A student electing a minor in Biology will complete at least 19 hours, including BIO 101 and at least 10 hours at the 300-400 level for which the prerequisite has been met. Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

- > Biology
- > Courses of Instruction
- > Core Requirements for All Biology Majors
- > Minor

- > **Ecology/Environmental Biology**
- > Biomedical Sciences
- > Radiologic Technology
- > Biology with a Teaching License

BIOLOGY (BIO)

Concentration in Ecology/Environmental Biology:

In addition to the core courses, the following courses are also required:

	Semester Hours
BIO 330 General Ecology	4
CH 206 Biological Chemistry	4
ENS 330 Environmental Chemistry	4
BIO 462/ ENS 462 Topics in Environmental Biology	3
BIO 301 Microbiology	4
CH 101, CH 102 General Chemistry	<u>8</u>
	Total 24-28

The student will take an additional 8 hours from the following courses:

	Semester Hours
BIO 416 General Taxonomy	4
BIO 335 Ornithology	4
BIO 340 Field Zoology	4
ENS 215 Environmental Problems	4
ENS 425 Field Study	1-4
BIO 342/ ENS 342/ POS 342 Environmental Policy and Law	<u>3</u>
	Total 51 (including core)

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

Biology: Ecology/Environmental Biology

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
 BIO 102, General Botany
 BIO 103, General Zoology
 CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II

Sophomore Year:

BIO 203, Genetics
 CH 206, Biological Chemistry
 BIO 330, General Ecology

Junior Year:

BIO 301, Microbiology
 ENS 330, Environmental Chemistry

Senior Year:

BIO 462/ENS 462, Topics in Environmental Biology
 BIO 300- or 400-level Recommended Elective
 BIO 300- or 400-level Recommended Elective

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Biology](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Core Requirements for All
Biology Majors](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> Ecology/Environmental
Biology](#)
[> **Biomedical Sciences**](#)
[> Radiologic Technology](#)
[> Biology with a Teaching
License](#)

BIOLOGY (BIO)

Concentration in Biomedical Sciences:

The following courses are also required:

		Semester Hours
BIO 360	Cellular and Molecular Biology	4
BIO 461	Topics in Biomedical Sciences	3

The student will take an additional 12 hours from the following courses:

		Semester Hours
BIO 204,		
BIO 205	Human Anatomy and Physiology I & II	8
BIO 302	Immunology	4
BIO 312	Parasitology	4
BIO 325	Developmental Biology	4
BIO 348	Virology	4

The student will take an additional 8 hours from the following courses:

		Semester Hours
CH 201, CH 202	Quantitative Analysis	4
CH 301, CH 302, CH 303, CH 304	Organic Chemistry	8
CH 401	Biochemistry	4
PSC 201, PSC 202	General College Physics	8
	Total 51 (including core)	

Students in either concentration may take electives from the other concentration.

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Biology: Biomedical Sciences

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
 BIO 103, General Zoology
 CH 101, 102, General Chemistry

Sophomore Year:

BIO 203, Genetics
 BIO 200 or higher level Recommended Elective
 BIO 301, Microbiology
 CH 200 or higher level Recommended Elective

Junior Year:

BIO/CH Recommended Elective
 BIO 360, Cellular and Molecular Biology

Senior Year:

BIO 461, Topics in Biomedical Sciences

CH Recommended Elective

CH/PSC Recommended Elective

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)

[> Biology](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Core Requirements for All
Biology Majors](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> Ecology/Environmental
Biology](#)
[> Biomedical Sciences](#)
[> **Radiologic Technology**](#)
[> Biology with a Teaching
License](#)

BIOLOGY (BIO)**Biology: Radiologic Technology**

For the student who is a Certified Radiologic Technologist, i.e., who has successfully passed the Technician's Registry Examination in Radiologic Technology, Averett offers a Bachelor of Science degree in Biology: Radiologic Technology. The University will allow up to 56 semester hours of elective credit to a student who has completed a hospital-based program in Radiologic Technology. Community college credits in Radiologic Technology will be transferred in the same manner that other community college credits are transferred.

Requirements for a Major in Biology: Radiologic Technology:

In addition to general education requirements, the following courses are required:

		Semester Hours
BIO 101	Introduction to Biology	4
BIO 103	General Zoology	4
BIO 461	Topics in Biomedical Sciences	3
Biology Electives	(300-400 level)	8
CSS 203	Introduction to Statistics	<u>3</u>
	Total	22

Sample Three-Year Course Sequence: Biology: Radiologic Technology

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
BIO 103, General Zoology

Sophomore Year:

CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics
BIO 300- or 400-level Elective

Junior Year:

BIO 300- or 400-level Elective
BIO 461, Topics in Biomedical Sciences

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)

[> Biology](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Core Requirements for All
Biology Majors](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> Ecology/Environmental
Biology](#)
[> Biomedical Sciences](#)
[> Radiologic Technology](#)
[> **Biology with a Teaching
License**](#)

BIOLOGY (BIO)**Requirements for a Major in Biology with a Teaching License:
Grades 6-12**

		Semester Hours
BIO 101	Introduction to Biology	4
BIO 102	General Botany	4
BIO 103	General Zoology	4
BIO 203	Genetics	4
BIO 204	Human Anatomy and Physiology I	4
BIO 205	Human Anatomy and Physiology II	4
BIO 301	Microbiology	4
BIO 330	General Ecology	4
BIO 360	Cellular and Molecular Biology	4
CH 101, CH 102	General Chemistry I, II	8
CH 301, CH 302	Organic Chemistry I, II	6
CH 303, CH 304	Organic Chemistry Lab I, II	2
PSC 201	General College Physics I	4
MTH 171	Applied Calculus or MTH 201, Calculus I	3
CSS 203	Introduction to Statistics	3
	Total	62

Other [General Education](#) and [Professional Education](#) requirements must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license in Biology.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Biology with a Teaching License**

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
 BIO 102, General Botany
 BIO 103, General Zoology
 MTH 171, Applied Calculus or MTH 201, Calculus I
 CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II
 TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications

Sophomore Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software
 CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics
 PSC 201, General College Physics I
 BIO 203, Genetics
 BIO 301, Microbiology
 PSY 205, Developmental Psychology
 ED 290, Foundations of Education (second semester)
 HIS 201 or 202, American History I or II
 HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems

Junior Year:

BIO 325, Developmental Biology
 BIO 360, Cellular and Molecular Biology
 CH 301, 302, Organic Chemistry I, II
 CH 303, 304, Organic Chemistry Lab I, II
 ED 322, Educational Psychology
 ED 476, 477, Secondary School Curriculum, Teaching Assistant
 PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics
 PE Fitness Course

Senior Year:

BIO 330, General Ecology

BIO 300+ Elective

ED 404, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education

ED 497, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > **Business Administration**
- > Courses of Instruction
- > Core Requirements for All Business Majors
- > Accounting
- > Finance
- > Management Science
- > Global Marketing Management
- > Minor

BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (BSA)

Dr. Paul Battaglia
 Dr. Steven V. Cates, Chair
 Dr. Paulette Dubofsky
 Dr. Jeffrey Grover
 Dr. John Guarino
 Dr. Jack Hammesfahr
 Dr. Frank Hawkins
 Dr. Michael Jernigan
 Mr. Vince Kania
 Dr. Alice Obenchain-Leeson

Dr. Wally Saunders
 Dr. Doug Spadaro
 Dr. Phil Sturm
 Dr. Chin-Chyuan Tai
 Dr. John Termini
 Mr. Brian Turner
 Dr. Jeff Woo
 Dr. Doug Woundy
 Dr. Peggy Wright

The Business Administration Department provides programs to expand the educational foundation of students for successful service in commercial, nonprofit, and government organizations or for entering graduate programs. Students first acquire knowledge and skills that are generally needed in business and may then concentrate on a specialized business function such as accounting, management, or marketing. Students may earn a degree with two or more concentrations in Business Administration by completing all requirements for both concentrations. However, only two concentrations within the major will be noted on the student's transcript. A minor in Business Administration is also available.

Programs of study lead to a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree and may also include a combined major of Business Administration and Equestrian Studies. Details of this program are listed in the material of the Equestrian Studies Department.

Students with a major in Business Administration must achieve a 2.00 GPA for all courses in the major. The 2.00 may not include more than two grades of D. All students majoring in Business Administration must satisfactorily complete Mathematics 171, its equivalent, or a higher numbered math course.

Students who earn a concentration in **Accounting** must have 126 semester hours for graduation.



[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Business Administration](#)

> [Courses of Instruction](#)

> **Core Requirements for All Business Majors**

> [Accounting](#)

> [Finance](#)

> [Management Science](#)

> [Global Marketing Management](#)

> [Minor](#)

BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (BSA)

Common Core Course Requirements for All Degrees in Business Administration

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

		Semester Hours
CSS 113	Microcomputers and Application Software	3
CSS 203	Introduction to Statistics	3
ECO 201	Principles of Microeconomics	3
ECO 202	Principles of Macroeconomics	3
BSA 206	Business Communications	3
BSA 221	Principles of Accounting I	3
BSA 222	Principles of Accounting II	3
BSA 305	Principles of Management	3
BSA 310	Principles of Marketing	3
BSA 324	Business Finance or BSA 370, Principles of Finance	3
BSA 434	Business Law	3
	Total	33

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> Business Administration
> Courses of Instruction
> Core Requirements for All
Business Majors

> **Accounting**
> Finance
> Management Science
> Global Marketing
Management
> Minor

**BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (BSA)
Requirements for a Major in Business Administration:
Accounting Concentration:**

Students who earn a concentration in BSA:ACCT must have a total of 126 hours for graduation.

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
Common Core Courses	33
BSA 320 Federal Taxation	3
BSA 325 Cost Accounting	3
BSA 343 Intermediate Accounting I	3
BSA 344 Intermediate Accounting II	3
BSA 345 Intermediate Accounting III	3
BSA 420 Auditing	3
BSA 422 Advanced Accounting	<u>3</u>
	Total 54

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Business Administration: Accounting**

Freshman Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

BSA 206, Business Communications
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I
BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics
CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics

Junior Year:

BSA 305, Principles of Management
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing
BSA 324, Business Finance
BSA 343, Intermediate Accounting I
BSA 344, Intermediate Accounting II
BSA 320, Federal Taxation
BSA 325, Cost Accounting

Senior Year:

BSA 345, Intermediate Accounting III
BSA 422, Advanced Accounting
BSA 420, Auditing
BSA 434, Business Law



- Introducing Averett
- Admissions
- Academic Programs
- Degree Programs
- Student Life
- Financial Information
- Directory of Personnel
- University Calendar
- Catalog Index

- > Business Administration
- > Courses of Instruction
- > Core Requirements for All Business Majors
- > Accounting
- > **Finance**
- > Management Science
- > Global Marketing Management
- > Minor

BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (BSA)
Requirements for a Major in Business Administration:
Finance Concentration:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
Common Core Courses	33
BSA 270 Personal Finance	3
BSA 371 Intermediate Finance	3
BSA 372 Money and Banking	3
BSA 373 International Financial Management	3
BSA 474 Commercial Bank Management	3
BSA 475 Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management	3
BSA 476 Derivatives and Risk Management	3
Total	54



- Introducing Averett
- Admissions
- Academic Programs
- Degree Programs
- Student Life
- Financial Information
- Directory of Personnel
- University Calendar
- Catalog Index

- > Business Administration
- > Courses of Instruction
- > Core Requirements for All Business Majors
- > Accounting
- > Finance
- > **Management Science**
- > Global Marketing Management
- > Minor

BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (BSA)
Requirements for a Major in Business Administration:
Management Science Concentration:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
Common Core Courses	33
BSA 326 Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership	3
BSA 354 Human Resources Management	3
BSA 366 Production and Operations Management	3
BSA 402 Quantitative Decision Making	3
BSA 444 Management Strategy	3
BSA 480 International Business	<u>3</u>
	Total 51

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Business Administration: Management Science

- Freshman Year:
 CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software
- Sophomore Year:
 BSA 206, Business Communications
 BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I
 BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II
 ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics
 ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics
 CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics
- Junior Year:
 BSA 305, Principles of Management
 BSA 310, Principles of Marketing
 BSA 324, Business Finance
 BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership
 BSA 366, Production and Operations Management
- Senior Year:
 BSA 354, Human Resources Management
 BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making
 BSA 434, Business Law
 BSA 444, Management Strategy
 BSA 480, International Business

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

> Business Administration
> Courses of Instruction
> Core Requirements for All
Business Majors

> Accounting
> Finance
> Management Science
> **Global Marketing
Management**
> Minor

BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (BSA)

Requirements for a Major in Business Administration:

Global Marketing Management Concentration:

The Business Administration: Global Marketing Management program is designed to assist students in their preparation for pursuing careers in areas such as selling, advertising and promotion, customer service or marketing management as well as for pursuing graduate study. This curriculum will provide the student opportunities to develop abilities that are necessary to pursue careers in public, private and entrepreneurial enterprises. Applicable positions are found in manufacturing and service businesses, industry, government, consulting and non-profit organizations.

The curriculum provides both theoretical concepts and applied practice. "Hands on" experience is provided through the completion of requirements such as case studies, group projects and internships. In addition, students are expected to refine their skills in areas such as concise articulation, problem solving, teamwork, information synthesis, computer literacy and understanding the global dimensions of business.

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
Common Core Courses	33
BSA 326 Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership	3
BSA 438, Managing Global Marketing Strategies	3
BSA 444, Management Strategy	3
*Three of the following:	<u>9</u>
BSA 349 Buying Behavior and Integrated Marketing Communications	
BSA 352 Sales Management	
BSA 359 Marketing Research and Planning	
BSA 449 Internship	
(a maximum of 3 semester hours of internship credit may be applied toward the major, with permission of instructor)	
Total	51

*Student-selected alternate course requests that are professionally based, recommended by the advisor, and approved by the department chairperson may be used. These courses may be transfer courses.

Students in this concentration must have a grade of C or higher in BSA 310, and BSA 206.

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

Business Administration: Global Marketing Management

Freshman Year:

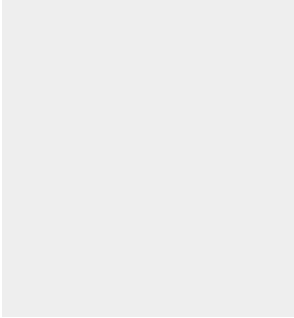
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

BSA 206, Business Communications
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I
BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics
CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics

Junior Year:

BSA 305, Principles of Management
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing



BSA 324, Business Finance
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership
BSA Recommended Elective

Senior Year:

BSA 434, Business Law
BSA 444, Management Strategy
BSA Recommended Elective
BSA Recommended Elective
BSA 438, Managing Global Marketing Strategies

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Business Administration](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Core Requirements for All
Business Majors](#)

[> Accounting](#)
[> Finance](#)
[> Management Science](#)
[> Global Marketing
Management](#)
[> **Minor**](#)

BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (BSA) Minor

Students electing a minor in Business Administration must complete 18 semester hours as follows: BSA 221, 222, ECO 202, plus 9 hours of BSA courses numbered 300 or higher.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> **Chemistry**
> Courses of Instruction

> Chemistry with a Teaching License
> Biology/Chemistry
> Minor



CHEMISTRY (CH)

Dr. Do Ren Chang, *Chair*

The science of chemistry is a central component of modern science education. A major in chemistry with sound selective courses will prepare the student in a variety of fields, such as molecular biology and biotechnology, chemistry, environmental science, medicine, pharmacy, and physiology.

The goal of this department is to educate students to be competent in their chosen careers. Our mission is to provide educational opportunities that are challenging and reflect the current state of knowledge in the field. In the past, our graduates have been successful in graduate schools and in professional schools, and have found jobs in industrial laboratories and in the teaching field.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

Requirements for a Major in Chemistry:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CH 101, CH 102 General Chemistry I, II	8
CH 201, CH 202 Quantitative Analysis and Lab	4
CH 260 Inorganic Chemistry	4
CH 301, CH 302 Organic Chemistry I, II	6
CH 303, CH 304 Organic Chemistry Lab I, II	2
CH 350, CH 352 Physical Chemistry I, II	6
CH 351, CH 353 Physical Chemistry Lab I, II	2
CH 401 Biochemistry	4
CH 460 Senior Seminar	2

CH Elective (Choose from CH 310 CH 320 CH 340 CH 360)	4
MTH 201, MTH 202 Calculus I, II	6
PSC 201, PSC 202 General College Physics I, II	<u>8</u>
	Total 56

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Chemistry

Freshman Year:

CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II
MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II

Sophomore Year:

CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Lab
CH 260, Inorganic Chemistry
CH 301, 303, Organic Chemistry I and Lab
CH 302, 304, Organic Chemistry II and Lab

Junior Year:

PSC 201, 202, General College Physics I, II
CH 350, 351, Physical Chemistry I and Lab
CH 352, 353, Physical Chemistry II and Lab

Senior Year:

CH 401, Biochemistry
CH Elective
CH 460, Senior Seminar

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Chemistry](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Chemistry with a Teaching License](#)
[> Biology/Chemistry](#)
[> Minor](#)

CHEMISTRY (CH)

Requirements for a Major in Chemistry with a Teaching License:

	Semester Hours
CH 101, CH 102	8
General Chemistry I, II	
CH 201, CH 202	4
Quantitative Analysis and Lab	
CH 260	4
Inorganic Chemistry	
CH 301, CH 302	6
Organic Chemistry I, II	
CH 303, CH 304	2
Organic Chemistry Lab I, II	
CH 350, CH 352	6
Physical Chemistry I, II	
CH 351, CH 353	2
Physical Chemistry Lab I, II	
CH 460	2
Senior Seminar	
MTH 201, MTH 202	6
Calculus I, II	
PSC 201, PSC 202	8
General College Physics I, II	
BIO 101	4
Introduction to Biology	
	Total 52

Other [General Education](#) and [Professional Education](#) requirements must be met to be recommended for a teaching license in Chemistry.

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Chemistry with a Teaching License

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
 CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II
 MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II
 TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications
 CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Lab
 CH 260, Inorganic Chemistry
 CH 301, 303, Organic Chemistry I and Lab
 CH 302, 304, Organic Chemistry II and Lab
 ED 290, Foundations of Education
 HIS 201 or 202, American History I or II
 PSY 205, Developmental Psychology

Junior Year:

PSC 201, 202, General College Physics I, II
 CH 350, 351, Physical Chemistry I and Lab
 CH 352, 353, Physical Chemistry II and Lab
 ED 322, Educational Psychology
 ED 334, Content Reading and Language Development

ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary Education
PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems

Senior Year:

CH 460, Seminar
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education
ED 489, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Secondary Education/PK-12
PE Fitness Course

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

> Chemistry
> Courses of Instruction

> Chemistry with a Teaching License
> **Biology/Chemistry**
> Minor

CHEMISTRY (CH)

Requirements for a Major in Biology/Chemistry:

	Semester Hours
BIO 102 General Botany	4
BIO 103 General Zoology	4
Biology Electives (select from BIO 204, 205, 301, 302, 330)	12
CH 101, CH 102 General Chemistry I, II	8
CH 201, CH 202 Quantitative analysis and Lab	4
CH 301, CH 302 Organic Chemistry I, II	6
CH 303, CH 304 Organic Chemistry Lab I, II	2
CH 350 Physical Chemistry I	3
CH 351 Physical Chemistry I Lab	1
CH 401 Biochemistry	4
PSC 201, PSC202 General College Physics I, II	<u>8</u>
	Total 56

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Biology/Chemistry

Freshman Year:

CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II
BIO 102, General Botany
BIO 103, General Zoology

Sophomore Year:

CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Lab
BIO Elective
PSC 201,202, General College Physics I, II

Junior Year:

CH 301, 303, Organic Chemistry and Lab
CH 302, 304, Organic Chemistry and Lab
BIO Elective

Senior Year:

CH 350, 351, Physical Chemistry I and Lab
CH 401, Biochemistry
BIO Elective

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Chemistry](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> Chemistry with a Teaching License](#)
[> Biology/Chemistry](#)
[> **Minor**](#)

CHEMISTRY (CH)

Minor

Students electing a minor in Chemistry must complete CH 101, 102, 201, 202, and 7 or 8 semester hours from the following: CH 260, and 300-level Chemistry courses for a total of 19 to 20 semester hours.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

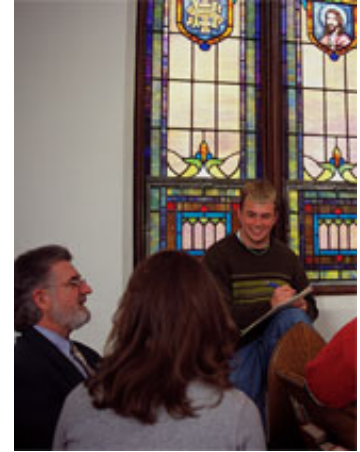
[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)



CHURCH MINISTRIES

A minor is available in Church Ministries to students who complete 15 hours in the courses listed below.

REL 361, Church Administration

REL 362, Religious Education

MUS 380, Church Music (same as REL 380)

Two Religion/Philosophy electives, 300 or 400 level.

The course descriptions of these requirements are listed in the [Religion](#) section of this catalog, the [Philosophy](#) section, and the [Music](#) section.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> **Computer Science**
 > Courses of Instruction
 > Minor in Computer Science
 > Teaching Endorsement

> Computer Information Systems
 > Minor in Computer Information Systems
 > Human-Computer Interaction Program

COMPUTER SCIENCE (CSS)

Dr. Donald T. Ethington

Ms. Tonja Hudson

Mr. Steven R. Lemery

Ms. Susan Osborne

Dr. Chin-Chyuan Tai

Dr. Gary A. Tucker, *Chair*

Averett offers Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Science degrees in two majors, Computer Science and Computer Information Systems. In addition, Averett offers minors in Computer Science and in Computer Information Systems to complement any major.

The purposes of courses in this department are to train students in the techniques, theory, and applications of computer science and information systems as well as in specific programming languages and computer systems. The two majors give students sufficient training to pursue any of the following:

1. A career in the public or private sector in a computer-related position.
2. Additional education at the graduate level in the areas of computer science, business, management information systems, and other quantitative fields.

The Computer Science Department believes the strengths of its programs are a direct result of its dedicated students, abundant and modern computer facilities and laboratories, small classes which allow good student-faculty relationships, personal attention from a faculty that places emphasis on quality teaching, and a faculty that is interested in and constantly aware of individual progress.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

Requirements for a Major in Computer Science:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CSS 203 Introduction to Statistics	3
CSS 211 Introduction to Programming I	4
CSS 212 Introduction to Programming II	4
CSS 231 Programming in C++	4
CSS 333 Data Structures	3
CSS 361 Topics in Computer Science I	3
CSS 372 Networks and Internets	3
CSS 381 Architecture and Assembly Language	3
CSS 411 Modeling and Simulation	3
CSS Elective at the 300-400 level	3
MTH 201, MTH 202,	9
MTH 301 Calculus I, II, III	3
MTH 211 Foundations of Higher Mathematics	3
MTH Elective at the 300-400 level	<u>3</u>
	Total 48

A student without previous computer experience would normally be expected to begin with CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.

Suggested Electives: other computer science courses, courses in all areas of the sciences,

mathematics, accounting and other business courses, and economics.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Computer Science**

Freshman Year:

CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II
MTH 201, 202, Calculus, I, II
CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics

Sophomore Year:

CSS 231, Programming in C++
CSS 331, Data Structures
MTH 301, Calculus III
MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics

Junior Year:

CSS 361, Topics in Computer Science I
CSS 372, Networks and Internets
MTH Elective at 300-400 level

Senior Year:

CSS 381, Programming in Assembly and Machine Language
CSS 411, Modeling and Simulation
CSS Elective at 300-400 level



[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > [Computer Science](#)
- > [Courses of Instruction](#)
- > **[Minor in Computer Science](#)**
- > [Teaching Endorsement](#)

- > [Computer Information Systems](#)
- > [Minor in Computer Information Systems](#)
- > [Human-Computer Interaction Program](#)

**COMPUTER SCIENCE (CSS)
Minor in Computer Science**

The department offers a minor for those students desiring a strong support area for their major. The following courses are required for the minor in Computer Science:

	Semester Hours
CSS 113 Microcomputers and Application Software	3
CSS 211 Introduction to Programming I	4
CSS 212 Introduction to Programming II	4
CSS 231 Programming in C++	4
CSS Electives (2) at the 300-400 level	<u>6</u>
	Total 21

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.



[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > [Computer Science](#)
- > [Courses of Instruction](#)
- > [Minor in Computer Science](#)
- > **Teaching Endorsement**

- > [Computer Information Systems](#)
- > [Minor in Computer Information Systems](#)
- > [Human-Computer Interaction Program](#)

COMPUTER SCIENCE (CSS)

Teaching Endorsement

An endorsement in Computer Science may be added to another primary teaching area upon the successful completion of selected courses. In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the requirements for the endorsement are:

	Semester Hours
Two of the following:	6
MTH 103,	
MTH 104,	
MTH 111,	
MTH 112,	
MTH 171,	
MTH 201,	
or any higher-numbered Math course	
CSS 113 Microcomputers and Application Software	3
CSS 211 Introduction to Programming I	4
CSS 212 Introduction to Programming II	4
CSS 231 Programming in C++	4
CSS 251 Introduction to COBOL Programming	4
CSS 305 Concepts of Information Systems	3
CSS 333 Data Structures	3
CSS 361 Topics in Computer Science I	3
CSS 372 Networks and Internets	3
CSS 411 Modeling and Simulation	3
ED 474 Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum	2
ED 406 Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education	<u>3</u>
	Total 45

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > [Computer Science](#)
- > [Courses of Instruction](#)
- > [Minor in Computer Science](#)
- > [Teaching Endorsement](#)

- > **Computer Information Systems**
- > [Minor in Computer Information Systems](#)
- > [Human-Computer Interaction Program](#)

COMPUTER SCIENCE (CSS)

Requirements for a Major in Computer Information Systems

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CSS 113 Microcomputers and Application Software	3
CSS 114 Web Authoring and Office Applications	3
CSS 203 Introduction to Statistics	3
CSS 211 Introduction to Programming I	4
CSS 212 Introduction to Programming II	4
CSS 271 Topics in Operating Systems	3
CSS 351 System Administration	3
CSS 372 Networks and Internets	3
CSS 375 Principles of Databases	3
CSS Elective at 200 – 400 level	3
BSA 221 Principles of Accounting I	3
BSA 305 Principles of Management	3
BSA 402 Quantitative Decision Making	3
BSA 434 Business Law	3
MTH 171 Applied Calculus or MTH 201 Calculus I	3
	Total 47

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Computer Information Systems

Freshman Year:

- CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software
- MTH 171, Applied Calculus
- CSS 114, Web Authoring and Office Applications
- CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics

Sophomore Year:

- CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I
- CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II
- BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I
- BSA 305, Principles of Management

Junior Year:

- CSS 271, Topics in Operating Systems
- CSS 372, Networks and Internets
- CSS elective 200-400 level
- BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making

Senior Year:

- CSS 351, System Administration
- BSA 434, Business Law
- CSS 375, Principles of Databases

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > Computer Science
- > Courses of Instruction
- > Minor in Computer Science
- > Teaching Endorsement

- > Computer Information Systems
- > **Minor in Computer Information Systems**
- > Human-Computer Interaction Program

COMPUTER SCIENCE (CSS)

Minor in Computer Information Systems

The following courses are required for a minor in **Computer Information Systems**:

		Semester Hours
CSS 113	Microcomputers and Application Software	3
CSS 211	Introduction to Programming I	4
CSS 212	Introduction to Programming II	4
CSS 305	Concepts of Information Systems	3
CSS 361	Topics in Computer Science I	3
CSS 372	Networks and Internets	3
CSS 445	Internship	3
	Total	22

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > [Computer Science](#)
- > [Courses of Instruction](#)
- > [Minor in Computer Science](#)
- > [Teaching Endorsement](#)

- > [Computer Information Systems](#)
- > [Minor in Computer Information Systems](#)
- > **[Human-Computer Interaction Program](#)**

COMPUTER SCIENCE (CSS)

Human-Computer Interaction Program

Averett University offers a [HCI program](#) for students choosing as their primary major either art, computer science, computer information systems, or psychology. The program is administered by the department of psychology in consultation with an advisory committee composed of faculty members drawn from each of the contributing departments.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Criminal Justice](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> 2+2 Program](#)
[> IDEAL Programs](#)
[> Aerospace Management/
Criminal Justice Program](#)

CRIMINAL JUSTICE (CRJ)

Dr. Rebecca L. Clark
 Dr. Laura L. Hartman
 Dr. Steve Wray, *Chair*

Averett offers a four-year Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice designed to give the student a broad-based professional preparation for his/her chosen career.

Students who have completed an Associate's Degree from another accredited college may choose to pursue a Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice in a 2+2 program. The 60 hours required for these degrees are designed to give the student a well-balanced educational experience and to provide professional development for his/her chosen career. Descriptions for Sociology courses may be found in the [Sociology](#) section of this catalog.

A major in Sociology/Criminal Justice allows students to prepare for entry into any of hundreds of jobs available today. The curriculum provides an excellent background for becoming a police officer, crime scene investigator, probation and parole officer, special agent for the FBI and other agencies.

Students examine the area of criminal law, prisons, court processes and procedures, the Constitution, and police procedures. An internship in one of the criminal justice agencies or departments allows students to experience for themselves what professionals do in these occupations.

A four-year program in Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice is also available to Averett students. This degree program is designed to qualify students for direct entry into careers in Criminal Justice that require pilot skills. Such careers include drug enforcement agents, government criminal justice agencies and F.A.A. Investigators. The outline of the program requirements is found in the [Aeronautics](#) section of this catalog. See the following to find descriptions of the [courses in Aeronautics](#) and descriptions of the [Sociology courses](#).

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

Sociology/Criminal Justice -- 4-year Program

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice as a four-year program at Averett University requires courses in Sociology and in Criminal Justice.

Criminal Justice is a growth area in the contemporary job market. Averett's program allows students to prepare themselves for entry into any of hundreds of criminal justice occupations available today. The curriculum provides excellent background for becoming a police officer, crime scene investigator, probation and parole officer, special agent for the F.B.I. and other agencies. The curriculum in Criminal Justice offers the opportunity to examine the area of criminal law, prisons, court processes and procedures, the Constitution, and police procedures. An internship in one of the criminal justice agencies or departments allows students to experience for themselves what professionals do in these occupations.

Requirements for a Major in Sociology/Criminal Justice (4-year program):

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
SOC 101 Introduction to Sociology	3
SOC 216 Criminology or CRJ 301 Criminal Justice	3
CRJ 387 Criminal Law	3
SOC 470 Research Methods	3
CSS 203 Introduction to Statistics	3
Sociology or Criminal Justice electives	<u>21</u>
	Total 39

A Sociology or Criminal Justice Research Project is required. This is a substantial research paper involving original research. CRJ 440, SOC 445, CRJ 445, or CRJ 488 will meet these requirements. Also, an independent study with guidance by a full-time department faculty member with the goal of producing an original quantitative or qualitative research paper will meet this requirement.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Sociology/Criminal Justice (4-year program)**

Freshman Year:

SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology

Sophomore Year:

SOC 216, Criminology or CRJ 301, Criminal Justice

SOC or CRJ Elective

SOC or CRJ Elective

CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics

Junior Year:

CRJ 387, Criminal Law

SOC or CRJ Elective

SOC or CRJ Elective

Senior Year:

SOC or CRJ Elective

SOC or CRJ Elective

SOC or CRJ Elective

SOC 470, Research Methods

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> Criminal Justice
> Courses of Instruction
> **Minor**

> 2+2 Program
> IDEAL Programs
> Aerospace Management/
Criminal Justice Program

CRIMINAL JUSTICE (CRJ)

Minor

Students electing a minor in Criminal Justice must complete 18 semester hours, including CRJ 301 **or** SOC 216, and 15 hours of Criminal Justice electives.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)[> Criminal Justice](#)[> Courses of Instruction](#)[> Minor](#)[> 2+2 Program](#)[> IDEAL Programs](#)[> Aerospace Management/
Criminal Justice Program](#)**CRIMINAL JUSTICE (CRJ)****Sociology/Criminal Justice (2+2 program)**

The Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice may be elected by students who have completed an associate's degree from another accredited college prior to enrolling at Averett. The program in Sociology/Criminal Justice is designed for the student who wishes to pursue a career in criminal justice, law enforcement, or criminal law. A student electing this option must complete the requirements listed below either through transfer credit or courses taken at Averett. Students must have at least 60 senior college hours and at least 123 total hours in order to graduate. The final 33 hours must be completed at Averett.

Requirements for a Major in Sociology/Criminal Justice (2+2 program):

	Semester Hours
ENG 111 Introduction to Writing and Research	3
ENG 112 Introduction to Literature	3
MTH 103 Principles of Mathematics	3
Fine Arts (any which meet General Education requirements)	6
REL 101 Introduction to Old Testament Literature or	
REL 102 Introduction to New Testament Literature	3
Religion or Philosophy Elective	3
HIS 101, History of Western Civilization I, II	6
HIS 102	
CSS 203 Introduction to Statistics	3
SOC 101 Introduction to Sociology	3
CRJ 387 Criminal Law	3
CRJ 440 Senior Seminar or	3
CRJ 445 Internship or	
CRJ/SOC 488 Criminal Procedure	
SOC 470 Research Methods	3
CRJ or SOC Electives	<u>18</u>
Other electives to equal at least 60 senior college hours	varies
	Total 60

A Sociology or Criminal Justice Research Project is required. This is a substantial research paper involving original research. CRJ 440, SOC 445, CRJ 445, or CRJ 488 will meet these requirements. Also, an independent study with guidance by a full-time department faculty member with the goal of producing an original quantitative or qualitative research paper will meet this requirement.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Criminal Justice](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> 2+2 Program](#)
[> IDEAL Programs](#)
[> Aerospace Management/
Criminal Justice Program](#)

CRIMINAL JUSTICE (CRJ)

Criminal Justice/Sociology IDEAL Programs

These programs are offered to adult learners and targeted to military, police departments, and prison personnel. As is the case in the IDEAL program generally, the courses are mostly independent studies delivered electronically, with contact hours where practical and feasible.

General Education requirements for a Bachelor of Science Degree with a major in Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL); for a Bachelor of Science with a major in Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL) for Law Enforcement Professionals; and for a Bachelor of Science with a major in Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL) for Corrections Professionals:

	Semester Hours
ENG 111 Introduction to Writing and Research	3
ENG 112 Introduction to Literature	3
Advanced Literature course 200-level or higher	3
Fine Arts (any which meet general education requirements)	3
HIS 101-102 History of Western Civilization I, II or World History	6
Social Sciences(select from two or more of the following Fields: Economics, Criminal Justice, Geography, History, Political Science, Psychology, or Sociology)	9
Philosophy or Ethics	3
Religion (select from the following courses: REL 101, 102, 201, 260, 304, 305, 306, 311, 312, 313, 315, 350)	3
Mathematics (select from the following courses: MTH 103, 104, 171, 201, 202)	3
CSS 203 Introduction to Statistics	3
Natural/Physical Science (select from the following courses: BIO 101 or any other Biology course for which the prerequisite has been met, CH 101, CH 102, ENS 215, PSC 101, 103, 110, 201, 202, PSY 120)	4
Total	43

Requirements for a Bachelor of Arts in these fields are the same except that the student is required to take CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics, and no other mathematics course. In addition, the student must complete the intermediate level of proficiency (second year) in any foreign language.

Major Requirements for Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL) Program:

In addition to the general education courses listed above, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
SOC 101 Introduction to Sociology	3
SOC 216 Criminology	3
SOC 317 American Minorities	3
SOC 470 Research Methods	3
CRJ 304/ SOC 304 Police in America	3
CRJ 340/ SOC 340 Juvenile Delinquency and Justice	3
CRJ 375/ SOC 375 Corrections	3
CRJ 387 Criminal Law	3

CRJ 407	Courts and Trials	3
Electives (select four courses from the following)		<u>12</u>
CRJ 488	Criminal Procedure	
CRJ 352	Criminal Investigation	
CRJ 445	Criminal Justice Internship	
SOC 329/ CRJ 329	Drugs and Substance Abuse	
SOC 306	Marriage and the Family	
SOC 309	Society and the Individual or	
PSY 219	Social Psychology	
PSY 200	Effective Behavior	
BSA 305	Principles of Management	

Total 42

Major Requirements for Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL) Program for Law Enforcement Professionals:

In addition to the general education courses listed above, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours	
SOC 101	Introduction to Sociology	3
SOC 216	Criminology	3
SOC 317	American Minorities	3
SOC 470	Research Methods	3
CRJ 301	Criminal Justice	3
CRJ 304/ SOC 304	Police in America	3
CRJ 340/ SOC 340	Juvenile Delinquency and Justice	3
CRJ 375/ SOC 375	Corrections	3
CRJ 387	Criminal Law	3
CRJ 407	Courts and Trials	3
Electives (select four courses from the following)		<u>12-13</u>
CRJ 488	Criminal Procedure	
CRJ 352	Criminal Investigation	
CRJ 445	Criminal Justice Internship	
SOC 329/ CRJ 329	Drugs and Substance Abuse	
SOC 306	Marriage and the Family	
SOC 309	Society and the Individual or	
PSY 219	Social Psychology	
PSY 200	Effective Behavior	
BSA 305	Principles of Management	
POS 205	American Government, National, State, and Local	

Total 42-43

Major Requirements for Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL) Program for Corrections Professionals (officers presently working in the field of corrections):

In addition to the general education courses listed above, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours	
SOC 101	Introduction to Sociology	3
SOC 216	Criminology	3
SOC 317	American Minorities	3
SOC 470	Research Methods	3
CRJ 301	Criminal Justice	3
CRJ 303/ SOC 303	Community Corrections	3

CRJ 340/ SOC 340	Juvenile Delinquency and Justice	3
CRJ 375/ SOC 375	Corrections	3
CRJ 387	Criminal Law	3
CRJ 407	Courts and Trials	3
Electives (select four courses from the following)		<u>12</u>
CRJ 445	Criminal Justice Internship	
SOC 329/ CRJ 329	Drugs and Substance Abuse	
SOC 306	Marriage and the Family	
SOC 309	Society and the Individual or	
PSY 219	Social Psychology	
PSY 200	Effective Behavior	
PSY 305	Abnormal Psychology	
BSA 305	Principles of Management	

Total 42

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Criminal Justice](#)
> [Courses of Instruction](#)
> [Minor](#)

> [2+2 Program](#)
> [IDEAL Programs](#)
> **[Aerospace
Management/Criminal
Justice Program](#)**

CRIMINAL JUSTICE (CRJ)

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in **Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice** is a four-year program at Averett University and requires courses in Aeronautics and Criminal Justice. [Specific course requirements for the program](#) may be found in the [Aeronautics](#) section of this catalog.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

> Education

- > Courses of Instruction
- > Minor in Special Education
- > Graduate Programs

> Elementary Education

- > Secondary Education
- > Field Experiences
- > Directed Teaching/Seminar

EDUCATION (ED)



Dr. J. Randolph Cromwell

Dr. Annie K. Ferrell

Dr. Pamela B. Riedel

Dr. Sue F. Rogers

Dr. Lynn Wolf, *Chair*

The goal of the Department of Education at Averett University is to graduate proficient teachers who pursue excellence through continuous learning and self-improvement. Our success is reflected in the fact that we consistently place nearly 100% of our graduates in teaching positions.

Averett's Department of Education has formed partnerships with nine regional school divisions where pre-service teachers complete field-based practica and graduate students are employed. Formalized partnerships exist within the region between Averett and the Danville Public Schools, Pittsylvania County Public Schools and Henry County Public Schools. The partnerships enhance departmental curriculum offerings and ensure that students have the best opportunities available for hands-on experience.

Virginia's Department of Education has approved Averett University's teacher education programs. Professional education at Averett University includes both undergraduate and graduate programs. (For details on the graduate program, see *The Catamount*.) The undergraduate component provides programs leading to initial licensure in elementary, secondary, and PK-12 education. Certification is available in Art (PK-12), Biology (6-12), Chemistry (6-12), English (6-12), English/Theatre (6-12), Health, Physical Education and Drivers Education (PK-12), History and Social Science (6-12), Mathematics (6-12), and Theatre (PK-12). Add-on endorsements may be gained in Journalism, Speech Communication, and Computer Science. Students may also choose to minor in Special Education. Through the M.Ed. program, students may also be certified as a learning disabilities teacher and a reading specialist; in addition, students who have a baccalaureate degree but no teacher certification can seek licensure through the Master of Arts in Teaching program (see *The Catamount*).

Students wishing a teaching license must be admitted to the program of professional studies in education (Teacher Education Program). Students seeking such admission must:

1. have a minimum 2.50 grade point average.
2. attain a score at or above the State of Virginia cutoff score on all the Praxis I tests.
3. never have been convicted of a felony or had a teaching license revoked in any state.
4. satisfy other requirements for admission to the program.
5. be approved by the Teacher Education Committee.

Admission to professional studies in education may not be sought until the student has successfully completed a minimum of 30 semester hours of college study with a minimum of 12 semester hours at Averett. Admission procedures are undertaken during the semester when the

student is enrolled in ED 290, Foundations of Education, and must be completed by the time 15 additional semester hours have been taken. Admission to Student Teaching may be sought when the student is enrolled in the appropriate course, ED 401 (for elementary, PK-6 students) or ED 474 (for secondary or PK-12 students), and a passing score on Praxis II has been achieved and is on record in the Education Department

After admission to the Teacher Education Program, the student must maintain a minimum 2.50 grade point average and receive no grade below a C in professional courses in order to retain good standing in the program. A 2.50 grade point average is required for enrollment in ED 401 and 406 (the instruction courses) and for placement in student teaching.

In order to complete the program and graduate, each student seeking elementary, secondary, or PK-12 certification is **required to take Praxis Examinations and score at or above any cutoff scores established by the State Board of Education. Scores on both the Praxis Examinations and the appropriate specialty area examination(s) must be reported to Averett University, code number 5017. A student's passing scores for Praxis I and II must be on file before registering for student teaching.** For the 2002-2003 academic year, the institutional pass rates for these exams were:

PPST Reading, 80%
 CBT Reading, 93%
 CBT Writing, 80%
 CBT Mathematics, 100%.
 The aggregate pass rate for the basic test was 86%.
 The overall aggregate pass rate was 88.25%.

Programs in professional education seek to:

1. develop in each candidate a sense of the professional character of teaching and of the importance and challenge of this profession.
2. emphasize intensive study in the academic disciplines which provide the foundation for the subjects and the Virginia Standards of Learning the candidate will teach in the school setting and provide a thorough understanding of the setting of those subject matter areas in the school curriculum.
3. assist the candidate in gaining an understanding of psychological growth and development, the process of human learning, and the dynamics of human interaction as these are related to the process of teaching.
4. assist the candidate in gaining a realistic concept of the role of the teacher, the student, and subject matter in the teaching-learning process, with emphasis on the function of the teacher in classroom management.
5. provide opportunity for direct experience in the classroom setting through observation, field experience, and directed teaching.
6. assist the candidate in the development of a realistic philosophy of education, an understanding of the role of the school in contemporary society, and an understanding of the evolution of education in this country.
7. address legal aspects, current trends and future issues in education.

Completion of the elementary education program leads to licensure to teach in grades PK-6. Other programs listed above, excluding those designated PK-12, lead to licensure to teach in grades 6-12.

Publications prepared by the Department of Education of the University should be consulted closely in order to insure that all of the requirements for teacher licensure have been included in a student's plan of study.

Students should be advised that the State Board of Education may alter licensure processes and requirements, thus making changes in Averett's degree programs necessary. The University reserves the right to make such alterations in degree requirements as are necessary to insure graduates of their eligibility for a teaching license.

- [Introducing Averett](#)
- [Admissions](#)
- [Academic Programs](#)
- [Degree Programs](#)
- [Student Life](#)
- [Financial Information](#)
- [Directory of Personnel](#)
- [University Calendar](#)
- [Catalog Index](#)

- > Education
- > Courses of Instruction
- > **Minor in Special Education**
- > Graduate Programs
- > Elementary Education
- > Secondary Education
- > Field Experiences
- > Directed Teaching/Seminar

EDUCATION (ED)
Minor in Special Education

Students majoring in Liberal Studies and working towards PK-6 licensure may pursue an 18-semester hour minor in Special Education.

Requirements for a Minor in Special Education:

		Semester Hours
ED 350	Reading and Language Development	3
ED 351	Field Practicum	0
ED 443	Diagnosis and Application of Reading and Language Development	2
ED 444	Practicum in Reading	1
	Four of the following:	<u>12</u>
ED 384	The Exceptional Student	
ED 461	Characteristics of the Student with Learning Disabilities	
ED 463	Behavior Management of Exceptional Students	
ED 465	Curriculum and Instruction for Students With Learning Disabilities	
ED 467	Psychoeducational Assessment	
	Total	18

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Education](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Minor in Special Education](#)
[> **Graduate Programs**](#)

[> Elementary Education](#)
[> Secondary Education](#)
[> Field Experiences](#)
[> Directed Teaching/Seminar](#)

EDUCATION (ED)

Graduate Programs

Averett University offers two graduate degree programs in Education, the Master of Education and the Master of Arts in Teaching. Averett also offers early admission to both programs.

The Master of Education degree program offers several areas of concentration from which students may choose one. Those interested in continued work in the elementary setting may choose to concentrate in Reading, Special Education, or Curriculum and Instruction. Teachers in the secondary setting may choose to concentrate in one of the core academic subjects or in Special Education. To be admitted to the Master of Education degree program, one must be licensed to teach or be eligible for licensure.

The Master of Arts in Teaching degree program is designed for students who have an earned baccalaureate degree from an accredited college/institution in a subject area, but who did not become licensed to teach through their undergraduate program. Students may earn teacher licensure in either grades PK-6 or Secondary Teacher 6-12 or PK-12 while completing the graduate degree.

Both secondary MAT and MED students concentrating in the core academic areas may complete a degree with 18 graduate hours in certain subject fields. This degree will allow the graduate of these programs to teach Advanced Placement (AP) and dual enrollment courses. Students should check with the director of the Graduate Education Program for subject availability.

Early Admission to Graduate Studies: Undergraduate students may enroll in two graduate courses for graduate credit during their senior year. These courses may be applied towards either the Master of Education or Master of Arts in Teaching degree programs, provided they are earned at Averett University within the time limit specified in The Catamount. Students must apply and be accepted in the graduate education program as special graduate students in order to take graduate courses.

Interested students should contact their academic advisor and the Director of Teacher Education.

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

> Education
> Courses of Instruction
> Minor in Special Education
> Graduate Programs

> **Elementary Education**
> Secondary Education
> Field Experiences
> Directed Teaching/Seminar

EDUCATION (ED)

Elementary Education (PK-6) (Liberal Studies with Teaching Certification)

Averett University students seeking a teaching license at the elementary school level will pursue a dual-disciplinary program leading to a Liberal Studies major. These students will elect either the Bachelor of Science or the Bachelor of Arts degree, depending upon the areas of concentration they choose. All students seeking licensure in Elementary Education (PK-6) must complete the following courses which include the [general education requirements](#).

Core Requirements for Students Seeking a Teaching License in Elementary Education (PK-6)

	Semester Hours
BIO 101 Introduction to Biology	4
CSS 113 Microcomputers and Application Software	3
ENG 111 Introduction to Writing and Research	3
ENG 112 Introduction to Literature	3
ENG 201 Major British Authors or a higher level literature course	3
ENG 470 Literature for Children	3
Fine Arts--Two courses from the following:	6
ART 100 The Visual Arts	
ART 201 Art History: Ancient to Medieval	
ART 205 Art History: Medieval through Renaissance	
ART 305 Art History: Baroque-Romanticism	
ART 306 Art History: Realism to Modern	
ART 405 Non-Western Art	
MUS 100 Introduction to Music Literature	
MUS 260 Music History: Renaissance/Baroque	
MUS 261 Music History: Classical, Romantic, Modern	
TH 105 Introduction to Theatre	
TH 220 History of the Theatre I	
TH221 History of the Theatre II	
HTH 220 Health and Fitness for the 21st Century	4
HIS 101, HIS 102 History of Western Civilization I, II	6
HIS 201, HIS 202 United States History I, II	6
IDS 101, Freshman Topics	2
MTH 111, MTH 112 Theory of Modern Mathematics I, II	6
PHL 150 Introduction to Philosophy or	
PHL 210 Ethics.	3
POS 131 The World of Politics	3
PSC 101 Survey of Physical Science	4
PSY 205 Developmental Psychology	3
REL 101 Introduction to Old Testament Literature or	
REL 102 Introduction to New Testament Literature	3
TH 103 Introduction to Human Communication or	
TH 300 Public Speaking	3
Total	68

(66 if transferring into Averett and not being required to take IDS 101)

ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR STUDENTS SEEKING THE BACHELOR OF ARTS DEGREE

Semester
Hours

Foreign Language

6-14

Students must pass six semester hours at the 200 level or above. (The courses to be taken will be determined by the placement test results.), or they must complete GRK 101, GRK 102 and HEB 101, HEB 102.

Total 72 - 82

All candidates desiring a teaching license in Elementary Education must complete requirements for Averett University's Liberal Studies degree. This major requires the student to select two areas of concentration from two different departments and to complete 18 hours in Professional Education. Thus the students electing to be PK-6 teachers must select, in addition to Education, two concentrations from the following departments: English, Foreign Language, History/Social Science, Mathematics/Computer Science, and Natural Science. Averett University requires a minimum of 12 hours to be taken in each concentration, exclusive of general education.

Students who select their two concentrations from Areas I, II and III-A must elect the Bachelor of Arts degree. Those who select any other combination of concentrations may elect either the Bachelor of Arts or the Bachelor of Science degree. Students are reminded that the Bachelor of Arts degree requires completion of the intermediate level of a foreign language.

AREAS OF CONCENTRATION**AREA I. ENGLISH**

English Concentration

	Semester Hours
ENG 202 Major British authors, 19th and 20th Centuries	3
English Electives (300-400 level)	6
Core Requirements (ENG 111, 112, 201 or higher literature course, 470)	<u>12</u>
Total	21

AREA II. FOREIGN LANGUAGE (Select either A or B)

A. French Concentration

	Semester Hours
FR 101, FR 102 Beginning French	8
FR 201, FR 202 Intermediate French	6
2 courses above 202 level	<u>6</u>
Total	20

B. Spanish Concentration

	Semester Hours
SPA 101, SPA 102 Beginning Spanish	8
SPA 201, FR 202 Intermediate Spanish	6
2 courses above 202 level	<u>6</u>
Total	20

Placement may result in a reduction of the number of hours required in the concentration. However, at least two semesters of the courses above the 202 level must be completed at Averett.

A student who completes either concentration may fulfill a foreign language minor by the additional completion of two of the 300-level courses in the foreign language.

AREA III. HISTORY AND SOCIAL SCIENCE (Select either A or B)

A. History and Social Science Concentration

	Semester Hours
History Electives (300-400 level)	6
POS 215 American National Government	3
POS 216 State and Local Government	1
POS 380 International Relations	3
Core Requirements (HIS 101, 102, 201 202; POS 131)	<u>15</u>
	Total 28

B. Social Science Concentration

	Semester Hours
SOC 101 Introduction to Sociology	3
PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science	3
Sociology/Psychology electives 300-400 level	6
Core Requirements (HIS 101,102,201,202; POS 131)	<u>15</u>
	Total 27

AREA IV. MATHEMATICS AND COMPUTER SCIENCE (Select either A or B)

A. Mathematics Concentration

	Semester Hours
*MTH 104 Precalculus Mathematics	3
MTH 201	
MTH 202 Calculus I, II	6
MTH 211 Foundations of Higher Mathematics I	3
Mathematics Elective, 302 or higher (MTH 311 preferred)	3
Core Requirements (MTH 111,112)	<u>6</u>
	Total 21

*Placement test may result in waiver of MTH 104.

B. Computer Science Concentration

	Semester Hours
CSS 211 Introduction to Programming I	4
CSS 212 Introduction to Programming.II	4
CSS Elective at the 200-400 level	3
CSS Elective at the 300-400 level	3
Core Requirements (MTH 111, 112, CSS 113)	<u>9</u>
	Total 23

AREA V. NATURAL SCIENCE

Natural Science Concentration

	Semester Hours
BIO 102 General Botany	4
BIO 103 General Zoology	4
BIO 203 Genetics or	
CH 101, 102 General Chemistry I, II	4-8
BIO 330 General Ecology	4
Core Requirements (BIO 101; PSC 101)	<u>8</u>
	Total 24-28

PROFESSIONAL COURSES FOR PK-6 CANDIDATES

	Semester Hours
ED 180 Earth Science/Geography for Educators	2
ED 290 Foundations of Education	3
ED 322 Educational Psychology (aiding placement included)	3

ED 350	Reading and Language Development	3
*ED 378	Curriculum in Grades PK-6	2
*ED 401	Instruction in Grades PK-6	3
*ED 443	Diagnosis and Application of Reading and Language Development	2
*ED 483	Mathematics and Science in Grades PK-6	<u>2</u>
	Total	20

FIELD EXPERIENCES

		Semester Hours
ED 351	Field Experiences/Practicum in Reading and Language Development	0
*ED 379,	Teaching Assistant: Grades PK-6	1
*ED 444	Practicum in Reading	1
*ED 488	Directed Teaching/Seminar in Grades PK-6	<u>12</u>
	Total	14

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Education/Related Courses for PK-6**

Freshman Year:

MTH 111, 112, Theory of Modern Mathematics I, II
 TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication **or**
 TH 300, Public Speaking
 HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century

Sophomore Year:

ED 180, Earth Science/Geography for Educators
 ED 290, Foundations of Education
 PSY 205, Developmental Psychology
 PSC 101, Survey of Physical Science
 ED 350, Reading and Language Development
 ED 351, Field Experiences in Reading and Language Development
 POS 131, The World of Politics

Junior Year:

ENG 470, Literature for Children
 PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics
 ED 322, Educational Psychology
 ED 443, Diagnosis and Application of Reading and Language Arts
 ED 444, Practicum in Reading
 ED 378, Curriculum in Grades PK-6
 ED 379 Teaching Assistant: Grades PK-6
 ED 483, Mathematics and Science in Grades PK-6

Senior Year:

ED 401, Instruction in Grades PK-6
 ED 488, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Grades PK-6

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Education](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Minor in Special Education](#)
[> Graduate Programs](#)
[> Elementary Education](#)
[> **Secondary Education**](#)
[> Field Experiences](#)
[> Directed Teaching/Seminar](#)

EDUCATION (ED)

Secondary (6-12) and PK-12 Education

A student who anticipates teaching on the secondary or PK-12 level may elect either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree, depending upon the academic discipline selected as a major. The degree is earned in the subject the student intends to teach. Courses in either secondary or PK-12 education are taken in addition to the requirements of a major program. Programs leading to professional licensure are offered in art (PK-12), biology, chemistry, English, English/Theatre, history and social science, mathematics, health, physical education and drivers education (PK-12), and theatre (PK-12). Computer science, journalism, and speech may be pursued as add-on endorsements.

Persons who wish to teach in disciplines other than those listed should be aware that Averett University cannot provide the directed teaching experiences for such subjects nor is the University authorized to provide the recommendations required by the Virginia Department of Education. Alternative routes to licensure in such instances may be discussed with the Director of Teacher Education.

CORE REQUIREMENTS FOR STUDENTS SEEKING SECONDARY OR PK-12 TEACHING LICENSE

Students who wish to be recommended for secondary or PK-12 teaching license must complete a major program in an academic discipline of the University and, in addition to that major program, must complete the following requirements.

	Semester Hours
CSS 113 Microcomputers and Application Software	3
ENG 111 Introduction to Writing and Research	3
ENG 112 Introduction to Literature	3
English literature course (201 or above)	3
Fine Arts to be selected from the following:	6
ART 100 The Visual Arts	
ART 201 Art History: Ancient to Medieval	
ART 205 Art History: Medieval through Renaissance	
ART 305 Art History: Baroque-Romanticism	
ART 306 Art History: Realism to Modern	
ART 405 Non-Western Art	
MUS 100 Introduction to Music Literature	
MUS 260 Music History: Renaissance/Baroque	
MUS 261 Music History: Classical, Romantic, Modern	
TH 105 Introduction to Theatre	
TH 220 History of the Theatre I	
TH221 History of the Theatre II	
HTH 110 Contemporary Health Problems	3
HIS 101, History of Western Civilization I, II	6
HIS102	
HIS 201 United States History I or other United States History	3
IDS 101 Freshman Topics	2
Laboratory science	4-8
(4 semester hours required for B.A. candidates; 8 semester hours required for B.S. candidates)	
Mathematics	3-6
(3 semester hours required for B.A. candidates; 6 semester hours required for B.S. candidates)	
PHL 150 Introduction to Philosophy or	

PHL 210	Ethics	3
	Physical Education fitness course	2
PSY 205	Developmental Psychology	3
REL 101	Introduction to Old Testament Literature or	
REL 102	Introduction to New Testament Literature	3
	Social Sciences	6
	Select from two of the following fields: Economics, History, Political Science, Psychology, Sociology	
TH 103	Introduction to Human Communication or	
TH 300	Public Speaking	3
		Total 57-66

ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENT FOR STUDENTS SEEKING THE BACHELOR OF ARTS DEGREE

Foreign Language	6-14
(Intermediate level of proficiency or one year each of Greek and Hebrew)	
	Total 63-78

PROFESSIONAL COURSES FOR 6-12 AND PK-12 CANDIDATES

	Semester Hours	
ED 290	Foundations of Education (Observations included)	3
ED 322	Educational Psychology (Aiding placement included)	3
*ED 334	Content Area Reading and Language Development	3
	Total	14
Additional professional course for students seeking a PK-12 license in Art, Theatre, or Health, Physical Education and Drivers Education:		
*ED 378	Curriculum in Grades PK-6	2
	Total	16

*Admission to Teacher Education Program required.

FIELD EXPERIENCES FOR 6-12 AND PK-12 CANDIDATES

	Semester Hours	
*ED 478	Teaching Assistant, Secondary/PK-12 Education	1
*ED 489	Directed Teaching/Seminar in Secondary/PK-12 Education	12
	Total	13

*Admission to Teacher Education Program required.

REQUIRED COURSES IN THE SUBJECT AREA(S) OF INTENDED LICENSURE ARE LISTED IN THE CATALOG UNDER THE [SPECIFIC MAJOR\(S\)](#). ANY RELATED COURSE REQUIREMENTS ARE LISTED IN THOSE SECTIONS.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Education](#)

> [Courses of Instruction](#)

> [Minor in Special Education](#)

> [Graduate Programs](#)

> [Elementary Education](#)

> [Secondary Education](#)

> **[Field Experiences](#)**

> [Directed Teaching/Seminar](#)

EDUCATION (ED)

Field Experiences

Extensive clinical experiences and practica are built into Averett's education programs to facilitate the transition from theory to practice. Various courses provide opportunities for the student to observe, tutor, aid, and do directed teaching in off-campus settings, as well as to tutor children in area schools. Additional information about the various field experiences is provided in the [course descriptions](#) and in a description of [directed teaching](#).

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Education](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Minor in Special Education](#)
[> Graduate Programs](#)

[> Elementary Education](#)
[> Secondary Education](#)
[> Field Experiences](#)
[> **Directed Teaching/Seminar**](#)

EDUCATION (ED)

Directed Teaching/Seminar

The student will enroll in the appropriate directed teaching course during one semester of the student's senior year after having successfully completed the appropriate instruction course and all other professional education requirements with a grade of C or better. Students seeking licensure in secondary education, Art (PK-12), Theatre Arts (PK-12) or Health, Physical Education and Drivers Education (PK-12) will enroll in ED 406 as part of the semester of directed teaching. **All students must be fully admitted to the Teacher Education Program and have passed both Praxis I and II before they will be placed in directed teaching. In addition, passing scores on the Virginia Reading Assessment, if applicable, must be achieved before graduation. This test is required for PK-6 and Reading Specialist certification.**

The student will be placed in an area public school for the directed teaching experience in keeping with the student's intended teaching area. The student teacher will be supervised by public school personnel and by University personnel with experience appropriate to the student's intended area(s) of licensure. For each endorsement being sought, the student will, in the directed teaching experience and/or in earlier practica, gain supervised experience in at least two settings in two different school divisions for a minimum of 300 clock hours, at least half of which will be in direct instruction.

Secondary and PK-12 candidates who wish initial recommendation for licensure in two or more subject areas must undertake directed teaching in each area. If a PK-12 endorsement is sought, teaching activities must be at the elementary and secondary levels.

Seminars are held concurrently with directed teaching and are intended to provide systematic discussion of the student's experiences during directed teaching and provide assistance in solving the common problems faced by the students in directed teaching. Such seminars are part of the student's professional semester.

The combined Directed Teaching/Seminar is graded on a Pass/Fail basis only.

The directed teaching courses are listed below:

		Semester Hours
ED 488	Directed Teaching/Seminar in Grades PK-6	12
ED 489	Directed Teaching/Seminar in Secondary/PK-12 Education	12

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> English](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> English with a Teaching License](#)
[> English/Theatre](#)
[> Journalism](#)

ENGLISH (ENG)

Dr. Stephen C. Ausband, *Chair*
 Dr. Ann D. Garbett
 Mr. Michael G. Hammonds

Dr. Betty B. Heard
 Dr. David E. Hoffman
 Mr. Karl Wallhausser

The English Department offers a Bachelor of Arts degree to the student who completes a minimum of 42 semester hours in English. Religion, theatre arts and speech, French, and history are recommended as related fields of study. The selection of required and suggested courses insures that students completing a major in English are proficient in their use of written language, have good analytical skills, are careful readers, and have a strong background in the major texts and movements. While many of Averett's English majors elect to teach in secondary schools, others pursue advanced degrees in law, business, and graduate schools, and many go into journalism or business-related fields such as public relations or advertising.

Students must attain at least a 2.50 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

Requirements for a Major in English:

In addition to [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ENG 111 Introduction to Writing and Research	3
ENG 112 Introduction to Literature	3
ENG 201 Major British Authors, through 18th Century	3
ENG 202 Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries	3
ENG 390 Origins and Structure of English	3
ENG 405 Modern Literature	3
ENG 414 Shakespeare	3
At least one course from each of the following pairs:	
ENG 320 English Novel in the 18th and 19th Centuries or	
ENG 323 Restoration and 18th Century Literature	3
ENG 401 Romantic Poetry and Prose or	
ENG 402 Victorian Poetry and Prose	3
ENG 406 Romantic Movement in American Literature or	
ENG 407 American Literature: The Gilded Age to WWII	3
ENG 413 Chaucer or	
ENG 415 Milton	3
English electives at 300-400 level	<u>9</u>
	Total 42

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: English

Freshman Year:

ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research
 ENG 112, Introduction to Literature

Sophomore Year:

ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century
 ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries

Junior Year:

ENG 320 or 323, The English Novel in the 18th and 19th Centuries or Restoration and 18th Century Literature
 ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English
 ENG 406 or 407, Romantic Movement in American Literature or American Literature: Gilded Age to WWII

ENG 300+ Elective

ENG 400+ Elective

Senior Year:

ENG 401 or 402, Romantic Poetry and Prose or Victorian Poetry and Prose

ENG 413 or 415, Chaucer or Milton

ENG 405, Modern Literature

ENG 414, Shakespeare

ENG 300+ or 400+ Elective

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> English](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> **Minor**](#)

[> English with a Teaching License](#)
[> English/Theatre](#)
[> Journalism](#)

ENGLISH (ENG)

Minor

Students electing a minor in English must complete 18 hours in English numbered 112 or higher; at least 9 of those hours must be at the 300-400 level.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> English](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> English with a Teaching License](#)
[> English/Theatre](#)
[> Journalism](#)

ENGLISH (ENG)

Requirements for a Major in English with a Teaching License

In addition to [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ENG 111 Introduction to Writing and Research	3
ENG 112 Introduction to Literature	3
ENG 201 Major British Authors, through 18th Century	3
ENG 202 Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries	3
ENG 320 The English Novel in the 18th and 19th Centuries or	
ENG 323 Restoration and 18th Century Literature	3
ENG 390 Origins and Structure of English	3
ENG 401 Romantic Poetry and Prose or	
ENG 402 Victorian Poetry and Prose	3
ENG 405 Modern Literature	3
ENG 406 Romantic Movement in American Literature or	
ENG 407 American Literature: Gilded Age to WWII	3
ENG 412 Creative Writing	3
ENG 413 Chaucer or	
ENG 415 Milton	3
ENG 414 Shakespeare	3
ENG 421 Teaching Composition	3
English elective at 300-400 level	<u>3</u>
	Total 42

Other [General Education](#) and [Professional Education](#) requirements must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license in English.

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: English with a Teaching License

Freshman Year:

ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research
 ENG 112, Introduction to Literature
 TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications
 HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems
 CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century
 ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries
 ED 290, Foundations of Education
 HIS 201 or 202, United States History I or
 United States History II
 PSY 205, Developmental Psychology
 PE Fitness Course

Junior Year:

ENG 320 or 323, The English Novel in the 18th and 19th
 Centuries or Restoration and 18th Century Literature
 ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English
 ENG 406 or 407, Romantic Movement in American Literature or
 American Literature: The Gilded Age to WWII
 ENG 412, Creative Writing
 ENG 300+ Elective
 ENG 400+ Elective
 ED 322, Educational Psychology
 ED 334, Content Reading and Language Development
 ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum

ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education
PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics
PE Fitness Course

Senior Year:

ENG 401 or 402, Romantic Poetry and Prose or
Victorian Poetry and Prose
ENG 413 or 415, Chaucer or Milton
ENG 405, Modern Literature
ENG 414, Shakespeare
ENG 421, Teaching Composition
ENG 300+ or 400+ Elective
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

ENGLISH/HISTORY (PRE-LAW)

Dr. Stephen C. Ausband
 Dr. Ann D. Garbett
 Mr. Michael G. Hammonds
 Dr. Jack I. Hayes, *Chair*
 Dr. Betty B. Heard

Dr. David Hoffman
 Dr. William S. Trakas
 Mr. Karl Wallhausser
 Dr. Darcy Wudel

A Pre-Law major, such as the English/History major, is NOT required for admission to law school. Successful law students come to law school with undergraduate majors as diverse as sociology and business, nursing and engineering, music theory and computer science. Nevertheless, students in law school need a foundation of skills, values, and bodies of knowledge, which Averett's English/History (Pre-Law) major seeks to provide. The necessary skills include analytic and problem-solving abilities, critical reading skills, the ability to write, speak, and listen effectively, and skills in research and the management and organization of large amounts of information. The necessary values include a dedication to serving others honestly and competently and to advancing fairness and justice. The bodies of knowledge that students need include a broad understanding of the following: history, especially American history; the American system of government; economics; human behavior and social interaction; financial transactions; diverse cultures; and ethics.

Requirements for a Major in English/History (Pre-Law):

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ENG 111 Introduction to Writing and Research	3
ENG 112 Introduction to Literature	3
ENG 201 Major British Authors through 18th Century	3
ENG 202 Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries	3
ENG 406 Romantic Movement in American Literature or	
ENG 407 American Literature: The Gilded Age to World War II	3
English elective in literature at 300	3
English elective in literature at 400 level	3
HIS 101, History of Western Civilization I, II	6
HIS 102	
HIS 112 Honors Seminar: History of Western Civilization II	1
HIS 201 202, United States History I, II	6
HIS 322 English History, 1485 to Present	3
History electives at 300-400 level	6
POS 215 American National Government	3
POS 216 State and Local Government	1
PHL 150 Introduction to Philosophy or	3
PHL 210 Ethics	
Electives (To be selected from the following)	<u>9</u>
BSA 221 Principles of Accounting I	
BSA 222 Principles of Accounting II	
BSA 434 Business Law	
POS 411 Constitutional Law	
PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science	
PSY 305 Abnormal Psychology	
SOC 101 Introduction to Sociology	
One upper level Sociology course	
	Total 59

Students will be accepted into the program at the end of their first 30 hours of work, if they

have attained a 2.75 overall grade point average and a 3.00 grade point average in English and History. Students in the program will be expected to maintain those grade point averages throughout their college work.

Students whose grades fall below the 2.75 overall grade point average or the 3.00 in English and History courses will be granted one semester's work (15 hours) to raise their grades to the necessary level. Students will be granted probationary status only once.

Transfer students will be granted a semester's probation (15 hours) to achieve the requisite grade point average (2.75 overall and 3.00 in English and History courses) in work at Averett University.

The English/History (Pre-Law) major is administered through the History Department.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
English/History (Pre-Law)**

Freshman Year:

- ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research
- ENG 112, Introduction to Literature
- HIS 101, 102, Western Civilization I, II
- HIS 112, Honors Seminar: Western Civilization II
- PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics

Sophomore Year:

- ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century
- ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries
- POS 215, American National Government
- POS 216, State and Local Government
- HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II

Junior Year:

- Recommended Elective
- ENG 406 or 407, Romantic Movement in American Literature or American Literature: The Gilded Age to WWII
- ENG 300-level Literature Elective
- HIS 322, English History, 1485 to Present
- HIS 300-level Elective

Senior Year:

- 2 Recommended Electives
- ENG 400-level Literature
- HIS 300- or 400-level Elective

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Environmental Sciences](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)

ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES (ENS)

Dr. James Caldwell
Dr. Do Ren Chang

Dr. Edward W. Fisher, *Chair*
Ms. Laura D. Meder

Interdisciplinary study in environmental science comes naturally from the interaction of humankind with the environment. The goal of this department is to provide competent students with sufficient knowledge in biology and in chemistry and with practical aspects of laboratory and field experiences in the environment. Great career opportunities exist in local, state, and federal government and in industry.

Requirements for a Major in Environmental Sciences:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CH 101, CH 102	8
CH 201, CH 202	4
CH 206	4
CH 260	4
BIO 101	4
BIO 102	4
BIO 103	4
BIO 301	4
BIO 330	4
BIO 416	4
BIO 462/	3
ENS 462	
ENS 215	4
ENS 425	1-4
	Total 52-55

All students must attain a minimum grade point average of 2.50 for all courses taken at Averett University in the major in order to graduate. These major courses include all required for the degree, as well as all taken as electives in Biology, Environmental Sciences and Chemistry and General College Physics I and II.

All seniors shall take a comprehensive examination administered by the faculty of the department. The subject matter for the examination will encompass all required core courses for the degree. The examination will be taken in the first semester of the senior year. The student is required to make 75 (out of a possible 100 points) to pass. Any student who does not pass the examination will be given the opportunity to repeat the examination the following semester. Given the timing of the examination, all core courses should be completed prior to the senior year.

Any student who does not pass the comprehensive examination or who fails to meet the minimum grade point average of 2.50 may remain in the program until these criteria are met, providing the minimum requirements of the College are maintained.

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Environmental Sciences

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
BIO 102, General Botany

BIO 103, General Zoology
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II

Sophomore Year:

ENS 215, Environmental Problems
BIO 301, Microbiology
CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Lab

Junior Year:

BIO 330, General Ecology
CH 206, Biological Chemistry
CH 260, Inorganic Chemistry
BIO 462/ENS 462, Topics in Environmental Biology

Senior Year:

BIO 416, General Taxonomy
ENS 425, Field Experience in Environmental Studies

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> **Equestrian Studies**

> Courses of Instruction

> Core Requirements

> Minor

> Management Track

> Dressage Track

> Eventing Track

> British Horse Society

Assistant Instructor program



EQUESTRIAN STUDIES (ES)

Ms. Jane Faulkner, *Chair*

Mr. James Filler

The Equestrian Studies Department's objectives are to produce graduates with a broad base of knowledge in horsemanship, an attitude of professionalism, and provide a gateway into the equine industry.

The Equestrian Studies program uses classes at the Equestrian Center and the main campus to give students a broad education on horse-related topics. Although a diverse education continues throughout the program, majors must choose an area of concentration. Three concentrations are offered. The **Equine Management Track** is for students most interested in business, facility and show management. The **Dressage Track** is for students most interested in developing a classical foundation of theory and ability in training, teaching and competing dressage. The **Eventing Track** is for students who prefer to combine training in dressage with stadium and cross-country jumping. An **Equestrian Studies minor** is also offered.

Students are offered the experience of clinics, workshops and seminars in addition to classes. Participation in shows, intercollegiate competitions, combined tests, horse trials, trek, and drill-rides is available to students who have shown satisfactory improvement. Self-motivation and athleticism are necessary for ES students to succeed. Guidance for specialized certification or post-graduate education is offered.

Possible career choices include equine insurance; pharmaceutical or equipment sales; design and/or construction of barns, courses, or facilities; equine massage; chiropractic; tourism; training; teaching; equine journalism; ownership/management of tack or feed stores; and racing, showing, boarding, or breeding stables.

Incoming freshmen are required to take a riding test and will be placed, according to their experience, into one of the Horsemanship courses. Students must attain a minimum GPA for 2.50 for all courses in the major or minor. In addition, ES majors must pass a departmental exit exam in order to graduate.



[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > Equestrian Studies
- > Courses of Instruction
- > **Core Requirements**
- > Minor

- > Management Track
- > Dressage Track
- > Eventing Track
- > British Horse Society
Assistant Instructor program

EQUESTRIAN STUDIES (ES)

Core Requirements for All Majors in Equestrian Studies:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following ES Core courses are required:

		Semester Hours
ES 105	Practical Concepts of Equine Care	2
ES 111	Careers: Integrating Personal Goals	2
ES 115	Stable Management	3
ES 208	Equine Anatomy and Physiology	4
ES 224	Teaching Elementary Riding	3
ES 326	Equine Lameness and Disease	3
ES 401	Strategies for Equine Business Management	3
ES 420	Equine Nutrition	3
ES 470	Internship	3
BIO 101	Introduction to Biology	4
BSA 206	Business Communication	3
CSS 113	Microcomputers and Application Software	3
HTH 200	First Aid and Safety	3
	Total	39

(Total includes BIO 101, which fulfills a general education requirement and is a prerequisite to ES 208)

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Equestrian Studies](#)
> [Courses of Instruction](#)
> [Core Requirements](#)
> **Minor**

> [Management Track](#)
> [Dressage Track](#)
> [Eventing Track](#)
> [British Horse Society](#)
Assistant Instructor program

EQUESTRIAN STUDIES (ES)

Minor

A student electing a minor in Equestrian Studies must complete 19 semester hours. Required courses are ES 105, 108, 208, and 224 for eleven semester hours. In addition, students must select one other riding class above the Horsemastership III level for 2 semester hours. Students must also select two of the following courses for 6 semester hours: ES 326, 330, 401, and 420.

Students must maintain a minimum GPA of 2.50 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > Equestrian Studies
- > Courses of Instruction
- > Core Requirements
- > Minor

- > **Management Track**
- > Dressage Track
- > Eventing Track
- > British Horse Society Assistant Instructor program

EQUESTRIAN STUDIES (ES)

Requirements for Equestrian Studies: Management Track

In addition to the [general education requirements](#) and the [equestrian studies core courses](#), the following **Management Track** courses are required:

		Semester Hours
ES 108	Horsemastership III	2
BSA 221	Principles of Accounting I	3
BSA 305	Principles of Management	3
BSA 310	Principles of Marketing	3
BSA 324	Business Finance	3
BSA 326	Organizational Behavior, Theory & Leadership	3
BSA 354	Human Resources Management	3
BSA 434	Business Law	3
ECO 201	Principles of Microeconomics	<u>3</u>
		Concentration Total 26

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Equestrian Studies: Management Track

Freshman Year:

- BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
- BSA 206, Business Communication
- CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software
- ES 105, Practical Concepts of Equine Care
- ES 111, Careers: Integrating Personal Goals
- ES 115, Stable Management
- ES 108, Horsemastership III

Sophomore Year:

- ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology
- ES 224, Teaching Elementary Riding
- BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I
- ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics
- HTH 200, First Aid and Safety

Junior Year:

- ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease
- ES 470, Internship
- BSA 305, Principles of Management
- BSA 310, Principles of Marketing
- BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory & Leadership

Senior Year:

- ES 401, Strategies for Equine Business Management
- ES 420, Equine Nutrition
- BSA 324, Business Finance
- BSA 354, Human Resource Management
- BSA 434, Business Law

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Equestrian Studies](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Core Requirements](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> Management Track](#)
[> **Dressage Track**](#)
[> Eventing Track](#)
[> British Horse Society](#)
[Assistant Instructor program](#)

EQUESTRIAN STUDIES (ES)

Requirements for Equestrian Studies: Dressage Track

In addition to the [general education requirements](#) and the [equestrian studies core courses](#), the following **Dressage Track** courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ES 109 Horsemastership IV	2
ES 211 Lunge Theory and Application	2
ES 213 Dressage Through 1st Level	2
ES 313 Dressage Through 2nd Level	3
ES 330 Riding Instruction Programs	3
ES 323 Advancing the Dressage Horse	2
ES 423 Teaching Dressage T-2	3
ES 424 Instructor's Apprentice	2
Select ONE of the following:	2
ES 214 Introduction to the Sport of Eventing or	
ES 314 Early Training of the Young Event Horse	
Select ONE of the following:	3
POS 325 Perspectives on Leadership	
JR 115 News and Feature Writing	
JR 210 Photography	
PE 205 Lifetime Fitness	
PE 365 Sports Psychology	

Dressage Track Total 24

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Equestrian Studies: Dressage Track

Freshman Year:

ES 105, Practical Concepts of Equine Care
 ES 109, Horsemastership IV
 ES 111, Careers: Integrating Personal Goals
 ES 115, Stable Management
 BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
 BSA 206, Business Communication
 CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

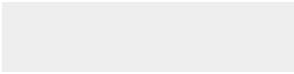
ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology
 ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application
 ES 213, Dressage Through 1st Level
 ES 224, Teaching Elementary Riding
 Dressage Track Choice
 HTH 200, First Aid and Safety

Junior Year:

ES 313, Dressage Through 2nd Level
 ES 323, Advancing the Dressage Horse
 ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease
 ES 330, Riding Instruction Programs
 ES 470, Internship
 Dressage Track Choice

Senior Year:

ES 401, Strategies for Equine Business Management
 ES 420, Equine Nutrition
 ES 423, Teaching Dressage T-2
 ES 424, Instructor's Apprentice



[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Equestrian Studies](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Core Requirements](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> Management Track](#)
[> Dressage Track](#)
[> **Eventing Track**](#)
[> British Horse Society](#)
[Assistant Instructor program](#)

EQUESTRIAN STUDIES (ES)

Requirements for Equestrian Studies: Eventing Track

In addition to the [general education requirements](#) and [the equestrian studies core courses](#), the following **Eventing Track** courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ES 109	2
ES 211	2
ES 214	2
ES 314	2
ES 316	2
ES 330	3
ES 416	2
ES 417	3
ES 418	3
Choose ONE of the following:	3
ES 213	2
JR 115	2
JR 210	2
BSA 353	3
PE 365	3
POS 325	3

Eventing Track Total 24

Sample Four Year Course Sequence: Equestrian Studies: Eventing Track

Freshman Year:

ES 105, Practical Concepts of Equine Care
 ES 109, Horsemastership IV
 ES 111, Careers: Integrating Personal Goals
 ES 115, Stable Management
 BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
 BSA 206, Business Communication
 CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

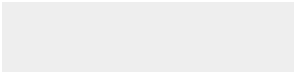
ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology
 ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application
 ES 214, Introduction to the Sport of Eventing
 ES 224, Teaching Elementary Riding
 HTH 200, First Aid and Safety

Junior Year:

ES 314, Early Training of the Young Event Horse
 ES 316, Training the Event Horse I
 ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease
 ES 330, Riding Instruction Programs
 ES 470, Internship
 Eventing Track Choice

Senior Year:

ES 401, Strategies for Equine Business Management
 ES 416, Training the Event Horse II
 ES 417, Theory and Application of Eventing
 ES 418, Preparation for USEA/CIP Instructors
 ES 420, Equine Nutrition



[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Equestrian Studies](#)
> [Courses of Instruction](#)
> [Core Requirements](#)
> [Minor](#)

> [Management Track](#)
> [Dressage Track](#)
> [Eventing Track](#)
> **[British Horse Society
Assistant Instructor
Program](#)**

EQUESTRIAN STUDIES (ES)

British Horse Society Assistant Instructor Program

Students who are majoring in Equestrian Studies may study for one semester or a summer in England in a course specifically designed to prepare them for the British Horse Society Assistant Instructor's Certificate. The course culminates with the "A.I." examination which covers four main areas: stable management and horsemanship, equitation, minor ailments, and power of instruction. Up to 12 semester hours of elective credit may be given to students who complete the course of study and pass the "A.I." exam. Students should consult with the coordinator of Equestrian Studies for details concerning the B.H.S.A.I. program. Tuition for these credits will be charged at one-half the prevailing rate. Other expenses are not included in these tuition charges.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> **French**
> Courses of Instruction

> Liberal Studies: Teaching
License Majors
> Minor
> Pass/Fail Option

FRENCH (FR)

Dr. Geneviève Moëne
Dr. Lawrence Wilburn

The modern language program is proficiency-based; that is, students learn skills which help them to function in the language. The goal of each level is to help the student advance to the next level of proficiency.

Placement

Students who wish to begin the study of French for the first time are not required to sit for the placement exercise.

All students with two or more years of high school credit, or transfers with college credit who intend to continue their study of French at Averett, must sit for the placement exercise. Students are encouraged to do as well as possible. A low score may result in the placement of the student in a lower level class for remedial purposes. No credit hours will be earned. (See section on [Placement Tests](#).)

Those students whose records indicate successful completion of three or more years of French within the past two years should, depending upon the results of the placement exercise, expect to be placed in 201 or a higher level course.

Opportunities for study abroad are available and arrangements may be made with the French professor.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> French](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> Liberal Studies:](#)

[Teaching License Majors](#)

[> Minor](#)

[> Pass/Fail Option](#)

FRENCH (FR)

Liberal Studies: Teaching License Majors

Students who wish to earn a teaching license in grades PK-6 may choose a concentration in French as one of two areas required for licensure. This concentration consists of French 221 and 222 or two of the 300-level courses, depending upon placement.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> French](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> Liberal Studies: Teaching
License Majors](#)

[> **Minor**](#)

[> Pass/Fail Option](#)

FRENCH (FR)

Minor

A minor in French is available to students who satisfactorily complete FR 221, 222, 225, and any 300 level course. Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> French](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> Liberal Studies: Teaching
License Majors](#)

[> Minor](#)

[> **Pass/Fail Option**](#)

**FRENCH (FR)
Pass/Fail Option**

Elective French courses may be taken Pass/Fail if they are not used to fulfill a general education requirement. For example, students who minor in French, who seek a B.A. degree or who choose a French course to fulfill the cultural component may not choose the Pass/Fail option.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> History](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> Secondary Teaching License
in History and Social Science](#)
[> History and Politics](#)
[> Minor](#)

HISTORY (HIS)

Dr. Jack I. Hayes, *Chair*
 Dr. Richard A. Pfau
 Dr. William S. Trakas
 Dr. Darcy Wudel

The Bachelor of Arts degree with a major in History requires a minimum of 33 semester hours in history. A minimum of 15 semester hours of history courses on 300 and 400 level must be completed at Averett University. Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

The history curriculum provides a broad foundation in the Western heritage and depth in American and modern European history (1450-present). A student who takes courses in history at Averett University should be better prepared to master the art, literature, languages, and even business of the West, appreciate more fully the meaning and importance of the liberal arts, be better able to adapt himself or herself to society, appreciate the maxim that those who fail to learn from history's mistakes are doomed to repeat those mistakes, understand cause and effect on the national and international level, be prepared to solve social problems because of a fuller understanding of them, and possess a strong sense of identity as a citizen of the Western world.

Careers in business, education, government service, and, with further study, the law are open to students who major or minor in history.

Requirements for a Major in History:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HIS 101 History of Western Civilization I	3
HIS 102 History of Western Civilization II	3
HIS 201 United States History I	3
HIS 202 United States History II	3
HIS 465 Seminar	3
History Electives (Including advanced American History (6) and advanced European History (6))	<u>18</u>
	Total 33

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: History

Freshman Year:

HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II

Sophomore Year:

HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II

Junior Year:

HIS Elective, Advanced European History
 HIS Elective, Advanced European History
 HIS Elective, Advanced American History
 HIS 465, Seminar

Senior Year:

HIS Elective, Advanced American History
 HIS Elective, Advanced European or American History
 HIS Elective, Advanced European or American History



[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> History](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Secondary Teaching License in History and Social Science](#)
[> History and Politics](#)
[> Minor](#)

HISTORY (HIS)

Requirements for a Major in History with a Secondary Teaching License in History and Social Science:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HIS 101 History of Western Civilization I	3
HIS 102 History of Western Civilization II	3
HIS 201 United States History I	3
HIS 202 United States History II	3
HIS 455 Political Development	3
History Electives as follows:	15
American History 300-400 level (6)	
European History 300-400 level (6)	
History Elective 300-400 level (3)	
ECO 201 Principles of Microeconomics or	
ECO 202 Principles of Macroeconomics	3
ED 180 Earth Science for Educators	2
POS 131 The World of Politics	3
POS 215 American National Government	3
POS 216 State and Local Government	1
POS 311 Comparative Government	3
POS 380 International Relations	3
REL 201 Religions of the World	3
	Total 51

Other [General Education](#) and [Professional Education](#) requirements must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license in History/Social Science.

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: History/Social Science with a Teaching License

Freshman Year:

HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II
 TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications
 POS 131, The World of Politics
 Foreign Language (2 semesters)
 ENG 111-112, Introduction to Writing, Introduction to Literature
 IDS 101, Freshman Topics
 Math course (MTH 103 or higher)
 Fine Arts course

Sophomore Year:

ECO 201 or 202, Principles of Microeconomics or
 HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II
 One upper level History course
 SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology
 ED 290, Foundations of Education
 PSY 205, Developmental Psychology
 PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics
 PE Fitness Course
 Foreign Language (if necessary)
 ENG 201 or 202, Major British Authors
 Laboratory Science course
 Fine Arts course
 HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems

Junior Year:

REL 101 or 102, Introduction to Old or New Testament
Four upper level History courses
POS 215, American National Government
POS 216, State and Local Government
POS 311, Comparative Government
ED 180, Earth Science for Educators
ED 322, Educational Psychology
ED 334, Content Area Reading
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education
REL 201, Religions of the World

Senior Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software
Two upper level History courses
POS 380, International Relations
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> History](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Secondary Teaching License
in History and Social Science](#)
[> **History and Politics**](#)
[> Minor](#)

HISTORY AND POLITICS

Dr. Fred Bolton
 Dr. Jack Irby Hayes, *Chair*
 Ms. Laura Meder
 Dr. Richard Pfau

Dr. William S. Trakas
 Dr. Steven D. Wray
 Dr. Darcy Wudel

The Bachelor of Arts degree with a major in History and Politics requires 17 courses (47 semester hours) spread almost evenly across the two disciplines of political science and history. This curriculum provides breadth in various epochs of American and European history, along with depth in the theory and practice of politics.

Students majoring in History and Politics usually select careers in business, the non-profit sector, or government service, or they apply to graduate school in history, political science, or law.

Students may not double major in History, History and Politics, or Political Science. Students must attain at least a 2.0 GPA in the major in order to graduate.

Requirements for a Major in History and Politics:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HIS 101 History of Western Civilization I	3
HIS 102 History of Western Civilization II	3
HIS 112 Honors Seminar: History of Western Civilization II	1
HIS 201 United States History I	3
HIS 202 United States History II	3
POS 131 The World of Politics	3
POS 215 American National Government	3
POS 216 State and Local Government	1
POS 220 American Government: Issues and Problems	3
HIS 465 Seminar OR HIS/POS 455, Political Development	3
HIS and POS Electives (no more than 12 hours in one discipline)	<u>21</u>
	Total 47

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: History and Politics

Freshman Year:

HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II
 HIS 112, Honors Seminar: History of Western Civilization II
 POS 131, The World of Politics

Sophomore Year:

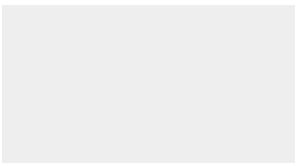
HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II
 POS 215, American National Government
 POS 216, State and Local Government
 POS 220, American Government: Issues and Problems

Junior Year:

HIS 465, Seminar OR HIS/POS 455, Political Development
 4 upper level history and/or political science courses

Senior Year:

3 upper level history and/or political science courses



[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> History](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> Secondary Teaching License
in History and Social Science](#)

[> History and Politics](#)

[> **Minor**](#)

HISTORY (HIS)

Minor

Students electing a minor in History must complete any 18 hours in History. The student may wish to concentrate in either American History or European History for the minor.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Honors Program](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)

HONORS PROGRAM (HON)

Dr. Laura L. Hartman, *Director*

The Honors Program is governed by the Honors Committee, composed of five faculty members, representing various disciplines, and two students. Chaired by the director of the program, the committee is responsible for establishing long-term goals and themes of the Honors Program; for soliciting, reviewing, and approving all courses which are part of the Honors curriculum; and for reviewing and approving all student applications for admission.

Student Admission

Entering freshmen may be accepted into the Honors Program by meeting either of the following:

1. High School grade point average of 3.2 or better and a combined SAT score of 1100 or better.
2. High School grade point average of 3.0 or better, a combined SAT score of 1050 or better and one of the following two criteria:
 - a. High School Rank in the top 15% of the graduating class, or
 - b. Completion of two Advanced Placement courses with accompanying Advanced Placement Test scores of 4 or better.

Sophomores and transfer juniors must meet three of the four criteria listed below to be admitted to the Honors Program.

1. Minimum overall college grade point average of 3.2.
2. Minimum grade point average of 3.4 in major.
3. Faculty sponsorship.
4. Completion of 6 hours Honors courses with grades of B or better.

Provisional Admission

Students may be provisionally admitted to the Honors Program under several circumstances: (1) pending completion of one of the above criteria, (2) transfer students with high grade point averages who have no previous Honors work, or (3) other unanticipated circumstances. Terms for the provisional admission will be set by the Honors Committee at the time of the decision, and must specify the action(s) required and the time-limit for removing the provisional status.

Continuation

Once admitted, the student must meet the following minimum requirements to continue in the Honors Program.

1. The student must make regular progress toward meeting the credit hour requirements of the Honors Program; at least one Honors course shall be taken each academic year as an indication of regular progress.
2. The student may have no more than two grades of C in courses used to satisfy Honors program requirements (this policy preempts the Honors grade point average requirement).
3. The student must maintain an overall grade point average of 3.2, a major grade point average of 3.4, and an Honors grade point average of 3.0.

General Requirements

To earn the Honors distinction, approximately 20% of all coursework attempted at Averett University must carry Honors credit.

Students may enter the Honors Program at the beginning of the freshman or sophomore years or as a transfer in the junior year; however, total hours required for Honors distinction is based on the total number of hours a student takes at Averett University. The following table outlines this policy.

Honors Distinction Requirements

Total Averett Hours Earned	Total Honors Hours Required
108 - 123	24
93 - 107	21
78 - 92	18
60 - 77	15

Students transferring with Honors credit from other institutions must complete the appropriate number of Averett University Honors hours based on the number of total hours earned while enrolled at Averett.

In addition to the total hours required, students must meet the additional requirements as listed below.

1. Freshman Colloquium, HON 101, is required for all students except those who transfer in 60 or more credit hours.
2. All Honors students, regardless of the total number of Honors hours earned, must complete the following Honors courses:

Honors 401, Senior Honors Project	3 hours
Honors 402, Senior Colloquium	3-6 hours

3. The student may earn no more than 50% of all Honors hours in the declared major.
4. The philosophy of the Averett University Honors Program embraces far more than a sequence of coursework. Honors students will be provided opportunities for and required to participate in a number of out-of-classroom experiences each year.

Honors Curriculum

The Honors curriculum is composed of courses that satisfy both general education, major requirements and general elective hours. Honors courses offered in academic departments are numbered 198, 298, 398, or 498. Enrollment in individual Honors courses are open by permission of the instructor to other students if space is available in the class.

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Honors Program

Freshman Year:

Honors 101 (second semester)

Sophomore Year:

Honors Electives from approved offerings (first semester)

Honors 201

Junior Year:

Honors Electives or Honors courses in major (first semester)

Honors 301 or Honors Electives or Honors courses in major (second semester)

Senior Year:

Honors Electives and/or Senior Honors Project (first semester)

Honors 401 and/or Honors 402 (second semester)

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)**HUMAN-COMPUTER INTERACTION PROGRAM (HCI)**

Human-Computer Interaction (HCI) is an interdisciplinary field of study that prepares students to work in teams that design, assess, and redesign attractive, easy-to-use software and web sites. Through exposure to principles of design, human behavior, and computer science, the HCI program produces students that understand design principles for creating pleasing and usable software, implementation requirements, and human-computer interaction principles.

Averett University offers a HCI program for students choosing as their primary major either art, computer science, computer information systems, or psychology. The program is administered by the department of psychology in consultation with an advisory committee composed of faculty members drawn from each of the contributing departments.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the program in order to graduate.

Degree Requirements

Complete the requirements for a major in art, computer science, computer information systems, or psychology. The following courses are required in addition to the major:

	Semester Hours
Foundation courses (10 hours)	
ART 100 The Visual Arts	3
CSS 203 Introduction to Statistics	3
CSS 211 Introduction to Programming	4
Human-Computer Interaction courses (9 hours)	
PSY 232 Humans and Computers	3
PSY 332 Assessing Usability	3
PSY 373 Memory and Cognition	3
Electives (15-18 hours)	
Select five of the approved electives below from departments other than your primary major.	
Design	
ART 110 Basic Drawing	3
ART 120 Basic Design	3
ART 130 Three-dimensional Design	3
ART 270 Applied Design	3
Human Behavior	
PSY 120 Psychology as a Natural Science	4
PSY 219 Social Psychology	3
PSY 338 Research Design	3
PSY 340 Behavior Principles	3
PSY 387 Sensation and Perception	3
Computer Science	
CSS114 Web Authoring and Office Applications	3
CSS 212 Introduction to Programming II	4
CSS 231 Programming in C++	4
CSS 235 Programming in JAVA	4
CSS 305 Concepts of Information Systems	3
CSS 375 Principles of Databases	3
	Total 34-37

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Human-Computer Interaction**

Freshman Year:

ART 100, Visual Arts (fall and spring)

PSY 232, Humans and Computers
Human Behavior Elective
Design Elective

Sophomore Year:

CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics (fall and spring)
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming
Design Electives
Computer Science Electives
Human Behavior Elective

Junior Year:

PSY 373, Memory and Cognition
PSY 332, Assessing Usability
Computer Science Electives
Human Behavior Electives

Senior Year:

Computer Science Electives
Human Behavior Electives

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Journalism](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Teacher Licensure
Endorsement](#)
[> Minor](#)

JOURNALISM (JR)

Mr. Michael G. Hammonds
 Dr. David E. Hoffman

The purpose of this major is to prepare students as generalists in mass media. Students will be trained for both print and broadcast media professions, and the courses will incorporate both theory and practice. Emphasis in most courses will be upon writing. Students who complete the degree will be eligible for jobs in a variety of settings including newspaper offices, television and radio broadcast facilities, and organizations requiring writing, desktop publishing, and public relations skills. Students may also choose to enter graduate school.

Students must attain at least a 2.50 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

Requirements for a Major in Journalism:

In addition to [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
JR 110 Introduction to Media	3
JR 115 News and Feature Writing	3
JR 152 Student Publications: Newspaper (1) (Three semester hours must be completed)	3
JR 225 Editorial and Current Affairs	3
JR 230 Editing and Layout	3
JR 310 Broadcasting	3
JR 330 Media Law and Ethics	3
JR 440 Internship	3
Electives to be selected from the following	9
JR 203 Film Studies	
JR 210 Photography	
JR 220 Public Relations	
JR 411 Magazine Article Writing	
Electives to be selected from the following	<u>6</u>
English (200 level or above)	
Political Science (200 level or above)	
History (200 level or above)	
Sociology (200 level or above)	
Psychology (200 level or above)	
Economics (200 level or above)	
	Total 39

NOTE:

To be admitted to Journalism courses numbered 300 or higher, students must have a grade of C or better in both ENG 111 and JR 115, and they must submit a portfolio of work completed in JR 115 and/or work completed for JR 152 or a professional publication. Students may also be admitted to 300-400 level courses with special permission from the instructor.

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Journalism

Freshman Year:

JR 110, Introduction to Media
 JR 115, News and Feature Writing
 JR 152, Student Publications: Newspaper

Sophomore Year:

JR 152, Student Publications: Newspaper

JR 225, Editorial and Current Affairs

JR 230, Editing and Layout

Recommended Elective

Junior Year:

JR 152, Student Publications: Newspaper

JR 310, Broadcasting

JR 330, Media Law and Ethics

Recommended Electives

Senior Year:

JR 440, Internship

Recommended Electives

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Journalism](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> **Teacher Licensure
Endorsement**](#)

[> Minor](#)

JOURNALISM (JR)

Teacher Licensure Endorsement

Students seeking teacher licensure must have a primary license in another field to which an endorsement in Journalism may be added.

For an added endorsement in Journalism, students must complete all requirements for the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Journalism](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Teacher Licensure](#)
[Endorsement](#)
[> **Minor**](#)

JOURNALISM (JR)

Minor

The following courses are required for the minor in Journalism:

	Semester Hours
JR 110 Introduction to Media	3
JR 115 News and Feature Writing	3
JR 152 Student Publications: Newspaper (1) (Three semester hours must be completed)	3
JR 225 Editorial and Current Affairs	3
JR 230 Editing and Layout	3

Students must take a minimum of 6 semester hours from the following courses or from any special studies courses offered.

JR 210 Photography	3
JR 220 Public Relations	3
JR 310 Broadcasting	3
JR 411 Magazine Article Writing	3
JR 440 Internship	<u>3</u>
Total	21

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)[> Leadership Studies](#)[> Courses of Instruction](#)**LEADERSHIP STUDIES (LDR)**

Dr. Richard Ferguson
 Dr. David Rosenberg
 Dr. Darcy Wudel, *Director*

Averett University offers an interdisciplinary minor of eighteen hours in Leadership Studies. It consists of an academic component, experiential learning and mentoring. Students have the opportunity to gain self-knowledge through a consideration of the theory and practice of leadership. The curriculum of this minor includes offerings from various departments and utilizes the talents of faculty, staff and administration in an effort to assist students in gaining leadership experience. The minor has at its core a list of leadership competencies that students are to develop. The competencies are as follows:

1. Students will possess the ability to think critically.
2. Students will possess and be able to articulate to others a personal leadership philosophy.
3. Students will have knowledge of leadership theories and an understanding of the application of various styles of leadership.
4. Students will be open-minded, tolerant of others, and will understand and appreciate individual differences and diverse points of view.
5. Students will be visionary, understanding the process of developing personal and professional goals.
6. Students will possess strong interpersonal skills.
7. Students will understand the dynamics of teams and be able to function within a group setting.
8. Students will be decisive and possess sound judgment.

Admission

In order to be admitted to the Leadership Studies minor, a student must declare the minor in the Registrar's Office. The Chair of the Leadership Studies Coordinating Committee will advise the student with regard to the minor.

Requirements for a Minor in Leadership Studies:

	Semester Hours
LDR 201 Emerging Leader Experience	1
PSY 200 Effective Behavior	3
LDR 301 Leadership in Action—On Campus	1
LDR 302 Leadership in Action—Off Campus	1
POS 325 Perspectives on Leadership	3
BSA 326 Organizational Behavior, Theory, and Leadership	3
LDR 440 Leadership Seminar	3

One three-hour course selected by the student in consultation with his/her advisor from a list of courses approved by the Curriculum Committee under guidelines developed by the Leadership Studies Coordinating Committee. Courses in the following list have already been approved:

JR 220	Public Relations
JR 225	Editorial and Current Affairs
PHL 210	Ethics
PSY 412	Industrial/Organizational Psychology
TH 300	Public Speaking

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Leadership Studies**

Freshman Year:

LDR 201, Emerging Leader Experience
PSY 200, Effective Behavior

Sophomore Year:

LDR 301, Leadership in Action On-Campus
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership

Junior Year:

LDR 302, Leadership in Action Off-Campus
POS 325, Perspectives on Leadership

Senior Year:

LDR 440, Leadership Seminar
JR 220, Public Relations **or**
JR 225 Editorial and Current Affairs **or**
PHL 210 Ethics **or**
PE 365, Sport Psychology **or**
PSY 412, Industrial/Organizational Psychology

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Mathematics](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> Teaching License at the
Secondary Level](#)
[> Mathematical Decision
Science](#)
[> Master's Degrees in
Education](#)

MATHEMATICS (MTH)

Dr. Donald T. Ethington, *Chair*
 Mrs. Tonja M. Hudson
 Mr. Steven R. Lemery
 Mrs. Susan E. Osborne
 Dr. Gary A. Tucker

The Mathematics Department offers a variety of courses and programs, including three majors,

- Mathematics
- Mathematics with Teaching Licensure at the Secondary Level
- Mathematical Decision Science,

and one minor in mathematics.

In addition, the Mathematics and the Education Departments offer two graduate degrees in education,

- Master of Education with a Mathematics Concentration
- Master of Arts in Teaching with a Mathematics Concentration

In all math-related majors and programs, students will communicate mathematics clearly and effectively, encounter a variety of learning experiences and use mathematics in a technological environment.

The mathematics major is a traditional course of study with emphasis on both theory and application. The program requires students to master the techniques of mathematics, apply these techniques to real problems, and understand the underlying theory. This major is an excellent choice for those planning to attend graduate school in a variety of areas, wishing to develop their abilities in logic, wanting to expand their horizons by way of mathematics, or using mathematics as a companion area for another major.

The mathematics major with teaching licensure at the secondary level is equivalent to the traditional mathematics major but is designed for students planning to teach mathematics at the secondary level. A student who has graduated from Averett's mathematics/teacher licensure program and is certified to teach in the state of Virginia may transfer that licensure to 38 states and the District of Columbia.

The mathematical decision science major is an interdisciplinary program for students with a combined interest in mathematics and the quantitative areas of business. This is an excellent choice for students interested in quantitative reasoning in the public or private sector.

The Mathematics Department believes the strengths of its programs are a direct result of its dedicated students, small classes which allow good student-faculty relationships, personal attention from a faculty that places emphasis on quality teaching, integration of technology into the curriculum, and a faculty that is interested in and constantly aware of individual progress.

A student who chooses to major in a mathematics program may elect either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree. The student is encouraged to select an option of either a major or minor in another field, or additional study in related areas. In particular, a major or minor in computer science is an excellent area for applications of mathematics.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

Requirements for a Major in Mathematics:

In addition to the [General Education requirements](#), the following courses are required.

	Semester Hours
MTH 201 Calculus I	3
MTH 202 Calculus II	3
MTH 301 Calculus III	3
MTH 311, Abstract Algebra I, II	6
MTH 312	
MTH 315, Theory of Real Variables I, II	6
MTH 316	
MTH 322 Multivariable Calculus	3
Mathematics Elective, 200+ level	3
Mathematics Electives, 400 level	<u>6</u>
	Total 33

Suggested electives: Courses in computer science, computer information systems, chemistry, physics, psychology, biology, business, and additional courses in mathematics.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Mathematics**

Freshman Year:

MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II

Sophomore Year:

MTH 200+ Elective

MTH 301, Calculus III

MTH 322, Multivariable Calculus

Junior Year:

MTH 311, 312, Abstract Algebra I, II

MTH 400+ Elective

Senior Year:

MTH 315, 316, Theory of Real Variables I, II

MTH 400+ Elective

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Mathematics](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> **Minor**](#)

[> Teaching License at the
Secondary Level](#)
[> Mathematical Decision
Science](#)
[> Master's Degrees in
Education](#)

MATHEMATICS (MTH) Minor

The department offers a minor in mathematics for those students desiring a strong support area for their major. Students electing a minor in mathematics must complete 18 semester hours in mathematics including MTH 201, 202, 211, 301, and 6 additional hours at the 300 or 400 level.

Students must attain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Mathematics](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> Teaching License at the
Secondary Level](#)
[> Mathematical Decision
Science](#)
[> Master's Degrees in
Education](#)

MATHEMATICS (MTH)

Requirements for a Major in Mathematics with a Teaching License at the Secondary Level:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
MTH 201 Calculus I	3
MTH 202 Calculus II	3
MTH 211 Foundations of Higher Mathematics	3
MTH 301 Calculus III	3
MTH 311 Abstract Algebra I	3
MTH 312 Abstract Algebra II or	
MTH 316 Theory of Real Variables II	3
MTH 315 Theory of Real Variables I	3
MTH 401 Geometry	3
MTH 403 Probability and Statistics	3
Mathematics Electives, 300-400 level	<u>6</u>
	Total 33

Suggested electives: Courses in computer science, computer information systems, chemistry, physics, psychology, biology, business, and additional courses in education and mathematics..

Other [General Education](#) and [Professional Education](#) requirements must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license in Mathematics.

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Mathematics with a Teaching License

Freshman Year:

MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II
 TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications

Sophomore Year:

MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics
 MTH 301, Calculus III
 MTH 300+ Elective

PSY 205, Developmental Psychology
ED 290, Foundations of Education
PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems

Junior Year:

MTH 311, Abstract Algebra I
MTH 312, Abstract Algebra II*
MTH 401, Geometry
MTH 300+ Elective**
ED 322, Educational Psychology
ED 334, Content Reading and Language Development
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education
PE Fitness Course

Senior Year:

MTH 315, Theory of Real Variables I
MTH 316, Theory of Real Variables II*
MTH 403, Probability and Statistics
MTH 300+ Elective**
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

* Take only one

**Take only one

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

> Mathematics
> Courses of Instruction
> Minor

> Teaching License at the
Secondary Level
> **Mathematical Decision
Science**
> Master's Degrees in
Education

MATHEMATICS (MTH)

Requirements for a Major in Mathematical Decision Science:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BSA 221 Principles of Accounting	3
BSA 324 Business Finance	3
BSA 366 Production and Operations Management	3
BSA 402 Quantitative Decision Making	3
BSA Elective to be selected from the following	3
BSA 305 Principles of Management	
BSA 310 Principles of Marketing	
BSA 322 Managerial Accounting	
BSA 326 Organizational Behavior, Theory and Management	
ECO 201 Principles of Microeconomics	3
CSS 113 Microcomputer and Application Software	3
CSS 203 Introduction to Statistics	3
CSS Elective at the 200-400 level	3
MTH 201 202, 301, Calculus I, II, III	9
MTH 302 Linear Algebra	3
MTH 322 Multivariable Calculus	3
MTH 403 Probability and Statistics	3
MTH Elective at the 300-400 level	<u>3</u>
	Total 48

Suggested electives: Additional courses in computer science, computer information systems, business, economics, and mathematics.

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Mathematical Decision Science

Freshman Year:

MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software+
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I

Sophomore Year:

MTH 301, Calculus III
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics
CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics
MTH 302, Linear Algebra

Junior Year:

BSA 324, Business Finance
BSA 366, Production and Operations Management
MTH 322, Multivariable Calculus
CSS Elective at 200-400 level

Senior Year:

BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making
BSA Recommended Elective
MTH 403, Probability and Statistics
MTH Elective at 300-400 level

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Mathematics](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> Minor](#)

[> Teaching License at the
Secondary Level](#)

[> Mathematical Decision
Science](#)

[> **Master's Degrees in
Education**](#)

MATHEMATICS (MTH)

Master's Degrees in Education

Averett offers two options with a concentration of 18 graduate hours in mathematics:

- Master of Education: Mathematics Concentration
- Master of Arts in Teaching with Secondary Licensure in Mathematics.

See *The Catamount* for more information on graduate studies in education.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Medical Technology](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)

MEDICAL TECHNOLOGY

Dr. James Caldwell, *Coordinator*

The University offers a Bachelor of Science degree with a major in Medical Technology through an affiliation with AHC/King's Daughter's Hospital, Fishersville, Virginia. Students may also have the opportunity to attend other accredited hospital programs. The program is designed to follow the standard procedure for the Bachelor of Science degree in Medical Technology--three years of college work and one year of clinical instruction and practice at a teaching hospital.

Although the University maintains the above affiliations with hospital programs, admission to the clinical year is not guaranteed by the University. Each student is responsible for applying and gaining admission to the clinical year program at an accredited teaching hospital. Faculty in the Department of Biology will provide assistance to students seeking a clinical year affiliation.

The University will grant the equivalent of one year of college credit (30 semester hours) for the clinical period if the student is admitted to the program in an approved teaching hospital and satisfactorily completes the required work. During the fall semester of the senior year, the student must register for MT 400, Clinical Experience, and will pay a \$5.00 lab fee. This course carries no credit, nor is tuition charged for it.

In addition to the General Education requirements, a student must complete the courses listed below prior to the clinical year. Additional courses may be required for admission by specific teaching hospitals. The program is approved by the Board of Registry of Medical Technology and the American Society of Clinical Pathologists. The Medical Technology program of Averett University is part of the Department of Biology.

All students must attain a minimum grade point average of 2.50 for all courses taken at Averett University in the major in order to graduate. These major courses include all required for the degree, as well as all taken as electives from Biology, Environmental Sciences, and Chemistry and General College Physics I and II.

All seniors shall take a comprehensive examination administered by the faculty of the department. The subject matter for the examination will encompass all required core courses for the degree. The examination will be taken after the completion of the junior year and prior to beginning the year of clinical training. The student is required to make 65 out of a possible 90 points to pass. Any student who does not pass the examination will be given an opportunity to repeat the examination during the next semester. Given the timing of the examination, all core courses should be completed prior to the senior year.

Any student who does not pass the comprehensive examination or who fails to meet the minimum grade point average requirement of 2.50 may remain in the program until these criteria are met, providing the minimum requirements of the University are maintained.

Requirements for a Major in Medical Technology:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

		Semester Hours
BIO 101	Introduction to Biology	4
BIO 103	General Zoology	4
BIO 204, BIO 205	Human Anatomy and Physiology I, II	8

BIO 301	Microbiology	4
CH 101, CH 102	General Chemistry, I, II	8
Eight Hours from the following:		8
CH 201, CH 202	Quantitative Analysis and Laboratory	
CH 401	Biochemistry	
CH 301, CH 303	Organic Chemistry I and Laboratory	
CH 302, CH 304	Organic Chemistry II and Laboratory	
Clinical experience (at hospital lab)		30
MT 400	Clinical Experience	<u>0</u>
		Total 66

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Medical Technology**

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
 BIO 103, General Zoology
 CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II

Sophomore Year:

BIO 204, 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology I, II
 BIO 301, Microbiology

Junior Year:

Eight hours of upper level Chemistry courses from the list above

Senior Year:

Clinical experience (at hospital lab)
 MT 400, Clinical Experience

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> **Music**

> Courses of Instruction

> Church Music Concentration

> Performance Concentration

> Minor



MUSIC (MUS)

Dr. S. Gail Allen, *Chair*
 Dr. Lee Bash
 Ms. Anne Lewis
 Dr. Timothy D. Montgomery

Located in the Emily Swain Grousbeck Music Center, the Department of Music offers a Bachelor of Arts degree with a major in music which has an emphasis in three performance areas: Piano, Organ, and Voice. Two areas of concentration are available: Church Music and Performance. Graduates can expect to be prepared for vocational goals such as leadership positions in the field of church music or private teaching and performance. These concentrations are also designed for students who want to further their education in graduate school or seminary.

The music program offers performance opportunities for students in choral and handbell choirs that perform both on and off campus. Opportunities are available for keyboard and voice students to work in area churches.

An audition is required for admission into the Music program. Auditions can be arranged directly with the Chair of the Music Department after a student has been admitted to the University. For students whose principal instrument of study is piano, the audition should include major scales in all keys, and literature at least comparable to Clementi sonatinas and Bach's "Two-Part Invention No. 8." For students whose principal instrument of study is voice, the audition should include a piece comparable to the repertoire found in 24 Italian Songs and Arias and a sacred solo or oratorio solo comparable to "He Shall Feed His Flock" or "O Rest In the Lord."

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

Requirements for a Major in Music:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), a major in music requires:

- Common Core Requirements of all students majoring in Music
- One of the concentrations named below
 - [Church Music Concentration](#)
 - [Performance Concentration](#)

Enrollment in the Music program is limited and **an audition is required** for admission to the major. The prospective student should audition in the spring semester before entering in the

fall. Auditions can be arranged directly with the music faculty after a student has been admitted to the University. Admissions Open House weekends are good times to schedule auditions. Auditions may be held as late as registration for the first semester of attendance; however, admission to the Music major is dependent upon a successful audition.

Common Core Requirements of all students majoring in Music

		Semester Hours
MUS 100	Introduction to Music Literature	3
MUS 104	Fundamentals of Music	1
MUS 207	Basic Conducting	2
MUS 260	Music History: Medieval, Renaissance, and Baroque	3
MUS 261	Music History: Classical, Romantic, and Twentieth Century	3
MUS 270	Music Theory I	4
MUS 270L	Music Theory I Lab	0
MUS 271	Music Theory II	4
MUS 271L	Music Theory II Lab	0
MUS 307	Choral Conducting for the Church Musicians	2
MUS 370	Music Theory III	3
MUS 371	Music Theory IV	3
	Total	28

Any student who is considering a career in the music ministry may choose to pursue a minor in [Church Ministries](#). Additionally, students receiving ministerial discounts at Averett University are required to take REL 255, Ministry Formations. For further information on in-service guidance, refer to the [Religion](#) section of this catalog.

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)[> Music](#)[> Courses of Instruction](#)[> **Church Music
Concentration**](#)[> Performance Concentration](#)[> Minor](#)

MUSIC (MUS) Church Music Concentration

	Semester Hours
Core Requirements	28
Applied Music (Principal Instrument - 8 hours) (Secondary Instrument - 4 hours) Ensemble (MUS 161 and/or 163)	12
MUS 215 Church Music Seminar I (Instrumental Methods)	8
MUS 315 Church Music Seminar II (Children)	1
MUS 380 Church Music	1
MUS 407 Advanced Choral Conducting	3
MUS 420 Hymnody/Liturgy	2
MUS 461, 462 Internship (1,1)	3
	<u>2</u>
	Total 60

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Music:Church Music Concentration

Freshman Year:

Applied Music, Principal Instrument (1 hour per semester)
 Applied Music, Secondary Instrument
 MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or
 MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir
 MUS 100, Introduction to Music Literature
 MUS 104, Fundamentals of Music

Sophomore Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (1 hour per semester)
 Applied Music: Secondary Instrument
 MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or
 MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir
 MUS 207, Basic Conducting
 MUS 260, 261, Music History
 MUS 270, 271L, Music Theory I and Lab
 MUS 271, 271L, Music Theory II and Lab
 MUS 215, Church Music Seminar I

Junior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (1 hour per semester)
 Applied Music: Secondary Instrument
 MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or
 MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir
 MUS 307, Choral Conducting for the Church Musician
 MUS 370, 371, Music Theory III, IV
 MUS 315, Church Music Seminar II

Senior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (1 hour per semester)
 Applied Music: Secondary Instrument
 MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or
 MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir
 MUS 380, Church Music
 MUS 407, Advanced Choral Conducting
 MUS 420, Hymnody/Liturgy
 MUS 461, 462, Internship I, II

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)[> Music](#)[> Courses of Instruction](#)[> Church Music Concentration](#)[> **Performance Concentration**](#)[> Minor](#)

MUSIC (MUS) **Performance Concentration**

Core Requirements

Applied Music (Principal Instrument - 14 hours) (Secondary Instrument - 4 hours)	Semester Hours
Ensemble (MUS 161 and/or 163)	28
MUS 480 Senior Recital	18
Music Electives (To be selected from MUS 380 Church Music; MUS 215 Music Seminar I; MUS 315 Church Music Seminar II; MUS 407 Advanced Choral Conducting; MUS 420 Hymnody/Liturgy)	6 1 <u>2-3</u>
	Total 55-56

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: **Music: Performance Concentration**

Freshman Year:

Applied Music, Principal Instrument (2 hours per semester)
Applied Music, Secondary Instrument
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir
MUS 100, Introduction to Music Literature
MUS 104, Fundamentals of Music

Sophomore Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (2 hours per semester)
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir
MUS 207, Basic Conducting
MUS 260, 261, Music History
MUS 270, 271L, Music Theory I and Lab
MUS 271, 271L, Music Theory II and Lab

Junior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (2 hours per semester)
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir
MUS 307, Choral Conducting for the Church Musician
MUS 370, 371, Music Theory III, IV

Senior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument
MUS 161, Averett Singers and/or
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir
MUS Electives
MUS 480, Senior Recital

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

> Music
> Courses of Instruction

> Church Music Concentration
> Performance Concentration
> **Minor**

MUSIC (MUS)

Minor

Students selecting a minor in Music must complete 21 semester hours in Music, including the following courses:

	Semester Hours
MUS 100 Introduction to Music Literature	3
MUS 104 Fundamentals of Music	1
MUS 260 Music History: Medieval, Renaissance, and Baroque or	3
MUS 261 Music History: Classical, Romantic, and Modern	
MUS 270 Music Theory I	4
MUS 270L Music Theory I Lab	0
MUS 271 Music Theory II	4
MUS 271L Music Theory II Lab	0
MUS 131- Piano, or	
MUS 432	
MUS 141- Organ or	
MUS 442	
MUS 151- Voice	3
MUS 452	
Elective (To be selected from the following:	3
MUS 131-432, Piano;	
MUS 141-442, Organ;	
MUS 151-452, Voice;	
MUS 161, Averett Singers;	
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir;	
MUS 207, Basic Conducting;	
MUS 370, Music Theory III;	
MUS 371, Music Theory IV;	
MUS 380, Handbell Choir;	
MUS 207, Basic Conducting;	
MUS 370, Music Theory III;	
MUS 371, Music Theory IV;	
MUS 380, Church Music)	

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Philosophy](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

PHILOSOPHY (PHL)

Dr. John C. H. Laughlin, *Chair*
Dr. William L. Trimyer

While Averett does not offer a major in philosophy, students have ample opportunity to be exposed to the discipline. In addition to a general introduction to the subject (which may count toward satisfying the General Education requirements), a course in Ethics is usually offered twice a year, and Philosophy of Religion once every two years.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

> **Physical Education,
Wellness and Sport
Science**
> Courses of Instruction
> Minor in Physical Education
> Minor in Coaching

> Teaching License
> Sport Management
Concentration
> Wellness/Sports Medicine
Concentration
> Athletic Training Program
> Golf Management
Concentration

PHYSICAL EDUCATION, WELLNESS AND SPORT SCIENCE (PE)

Mr. Lee Burton, *Athletic Training Program Director*
Dr. Richard Ferguson
Dr. J. Thomson Foster, *Chair*
Ms. Barbara A. Kushubar

Either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree may be earned in physical education in any one of six concentrations: Physical Education-Non-teaching; Health, Physical Education and Driver's Education: PK-12; Sport Management; Wellness/Sports Medicine; Athletic Training; or Golf Management. Transfer students must complete a minimum of 18 semester hours in the major at Averett, 9 of which must be on the 300-400 level. Physical Education majors are strongly urged to develop in-depth competency in at least one performance area or one sport.

All majors are required to take oral and written examinations based on course work in their area of concentration. These examinations will be given during the spring semester of their senior year. Unless otherwise specified, students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate. **All majors must satisfy the General Education science requirements by taking Biology 101 and either Biology 204 or 205.**

Requirements for a Major in Physical Education: Non-Teaching Concentration

This concentration provides preparation for careers in such settings as YMCA, Boys Club, and city recreation organizations.

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HTH 200 First Aid and Safety	3
PE 203 Introduction to Physical Education	3
PE 315 Physiology of Activity	3
PE 320 Kinesiology	3
PE 365 Sport Psychology	3
PE 415 Motor Learning	3
PE 466 Internship	6
Physical Education Activity Courses	14
Electives in the department:	<u>9</u>
	Total 47

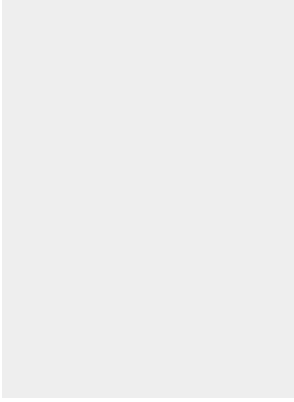
Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Physical Education

Freshman Year:

HTH 200, First Aid and Safety
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
PE Recommended Elective
PE Activity Course

Sophomore Year:

BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology
PE 203, Introduction to Physical Education



PE Recommended Elective
PE 315, Physiology of Activity
PE 365, Sport Psychology
PE Activity Courses (2)

Junior Year:

PE 320, Kinesiology
PE 466, Internship
PE Recommended Elective
PE Activity Courses (2)

Senior Year:

PE 415, Motor Learning
PE Activity Courses (2)

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> Physical Education, Wellness
and Sport Science

> Courses of Instruction

> **Minor in Physical
Education**

> Minor in Coaching

> Teaching License

> Sport Management
Concentration

> Wellness/Sports Medicine
Concentration

> Athletic Training Program

> Golf Management
Concentration

PHYSICAL EDUCATION, WELLNESS AND SPORT SCIENCE (PE)

Minor in Physical Education

Students electing a minor in physical education must complete 18 semester hours in Physical Education and/or Health. At least 9 of those hours must be at the 300-400 level. Neither activity courses nor PE 254, Life Guarding, may be included in the hours required for the minor.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.



[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science
- > Courses of Instruction
- > Minor in Physical Education
- > **Minor in Coaching**

- > Teaching License
- > Sport Management Concentration
- > Wellness/Sports Medicine Concentration
- > Athletic Training Program
- > Golf Management Concentration

**PHYSICAL EDUCATION, WELLNESS AND SPORT SCIENCE (PE)
Minor in Coaching**

The following courses are required for a minor in coaching:

	Semester Hours
PE 302 Coaching and Officiating	3
PE 315 Physiology of Activity	3
PE 365 Sports Psychology	3
PE 415 Motor Learning	3
Electives	6

Electives must be exclusive of activity courses or practicum experiences. If courses have prerequisites, the prerequisites must be satisfied, or permission obtained from the instructor.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

> Physical Education, Wellness
and Sport Science
> Courses of Instruction
> Minor in Physical Education
> Minor in Coaching

> **Teaching License**
> Sport Management
Concentration
> Wellness/Sports Medicine
Concentration
> Athletic Training Program
> Golf Management
Concentration

PHYSICAL EDUCATION, WELLNESS AND SPORT SCIENCE (PE)

Requirements for a Major in Health, Physical Education and Driver's Education: Teaching License (PK-12) Concentration:

Licensure in Health, Physical Education and Driver's Education includes all grade levels (PK-12). Other [General Education](#) and [Professional Education](#) requirements must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license.

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
PE 303 Elementary School Physical Education	3
PE 304 Secondary School Physical Education	3
PE 306 Foundations of Traffic Safety	3
PE 307 Principles and Methods of Driver's Education	3
PE 315 Physiology of Activity	3
PE 320 Kinesiology	3
PE 351 Adapted Physical Education	3
PE 415 Motor Learning	3
PE 416 Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports	3
PE 444 Research Methods in Physical Education	3
HTH 110 Contemporary Health Problems	3
HTH 200 First Aid and Safety	3
HTH 220 Health and Fitness for the 21st Century	4
BIO 101 Introduction to Biology	4
BIO 204 Human Anatomy and Physiology	4
or	
BIO 205	
Physical Education Activity Courses (Courses must be selected from individual and team sports.)	<u>14</u>
	Total 56

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

Health, Physical Education and Driver's Education with a Teaching License (PK-12)

Freshman Year:

HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications
PE Activity Course

Sophomore Year:

ED 290, Foundations of Education
PE 315, Physiology of Activity
BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety
HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century
HIS 201 or 202, United States History I or
United States History II
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology
PE Activity Courses (2)

Junior Year:

PE 306, Foundations of Traffic Safety
PE 307, Principles and Methods of Driver's Education
PE 320, Kinesiology

PE 351, Adapted Physical Education
PE 415, Motor Learning
PE Activity Courses (2)
PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics
ED 322, Educational Psychology
ED 334, Content Reading and Language Development
ED 378 and 379, Elementary PK-6 Curriculum and
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education

Senior Year:

PE 303, Elementary School Physical Education
PE 304, Secondary School Physical Education
PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education
PE 444, Research Methods in Physical Education
PE Activity Courses (2)
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education



[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

- > Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science
- > Courses of Instruction
- > Minor in Physical Education
- > Minor in Coaching

- > Teaching License
- > **Sport Management Concentration**
- > Wellness/Sports Medicine Concentration
- > Athletic Training Program
- > Golf Management Concentration

PHYSICAL EDUCATION, WELLNESS AND SPORT SCIENCE (PE)

Requirements for a Major in Physical Education: Sport Management Concentration

Averett University offers a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree in Physical Education: Sports Management. This major is designed for those students interested in management positions in businesses such as collegiate or professional athletics, sporting goods sales, fitness and conditioning centers both in the private and corporate sectors, and facility management. In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BSA 206 Business Communication	3
BSA 221 Principles of Accounting I	3
BSA 222 Principles of Accounting II	3
BSA 305 Principles of Management	3
BSA 310 Principles of Marketing	3
BSA352 Sales Management	3
CSS 113 Microcomputers and Application Software	3
HTH 200 First Aid and Safety	3
PE 203 Introduction to Physical Education	3
PE 207 Introduction to Sport Management	3
PE 365 Sport Psychology	3
PE 416 Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports	3
PE 432 Sport Law	3
PE 466 Internship	6
Physical Education Activity Courses (4 different courses)	<u>8</u>
TH 300 Public Speaking	3
	Total 53

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Physical Education: Sport Management**

Freshman Year:

- BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I
- CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software
- PE Activity Course
- BIO 101, Introduction to Biology

Sophomore Year:

- BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology
- BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II
- HTH 200, First Aid and Safety
- PE 203, Introduction to Physical Education
- PE Activity Course

Junior Year:

- BSA 305, Principles of Management
- BSA 310, Principles of Marketing
- BSA 352, Sales Management
- PE 207, Introduction to Sport Management
- TH 300, Public Speaking
- PE Activity Course

Senior Year:

- PE 365, Sport Psychology
- PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education
- PE 432, Sport Law
- PE 466, Internship

PE Activity Course

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> Physical Education, Wellness
and Sport Science
> Courses of Instruction
> Minor in Physical Education
> Minor in Coaching

> Teaching License
> Sport Management
Concentration
> **Wellness/Sports
Medicine Concentration**
> Athletic Training Program
> Golf Management
Concentration

PHYSICAL EDUCATION, WELLNESS AND SPORT SCIENCE (PE)

Requirements for a Major in Physical Education: Wellness/Sports Medicine Concentration:

This major is designed for those students who are interested in pursuing careers in hospital wellness, private health clubs, corporate fitness, and physical therapy. Averett cannot provide certification in physical therapy, but we can provide the prerequisite courses required for admission to schools that do offer such certification.



In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

		Semester Hours
HTH 110	Contemporary Health Problems	3
HTH 200	First Aid and Safety	3
HTH 320	Nutrition and Sports Performance	3
PE 280	Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses	3
PE 315	Physiology of Activity	3
PE 320	Kinesiology	3
PE 355	Health Aspects of Gerontology	3
PE 370	Therapeutic Exercise	3
PE 360	Sports Medicine I	3
PE 360L	Sports Medicine I Lab	1
PE 365	Sports Psychology	3
PE 416	Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports	3
PE 421	Sports Medicine II	3
PE 421L	Sports Medicine II Lab	1
PE 425	Biomechanics	3
PE 428	Graded Exercise Testing	3
PE 466	Internship	6
	Physical Education Activity Courses	<u>4</u>
		Total 54

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Physical Education: Wellness/Sports Medicine

Freshman Year:

HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology

Sophomore Year:

BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology
HTH 320, Nutrition and Sports Performance
PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses
PE 315, Physiology of Activity
PE Activity Course

Junior Year:

- PE 320, Kinesiology
- PE 355, Health Aspects of Gerontology
- PE 360 and 360L, Sports Medicine I
- PE 365, Sport Psychology
- PE 370, Therapeutic Exercise
- PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports

Senior Year:

- PE 421 and 421L Sports Medicine II
- PE 425, Biomechanics
- PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing
- PE 466, Internship
- PE Activity Course

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

> Physical Education, Wellness
and Sport Science
> Courses of Instruction
> Minor in Physical Education
> Minor in Coaching

> Teaching License
> Sport Management
Concentration
> Wellness/Sports Medicine
Concentration
> **Athletic Training
Program**
> Golf Management
Concentration

PHYSICAL EDUCATION, WELLNESS AND SPORT SCIENCE (PE)

Requirements for a Major in Physical Education:

Athletic Training Program

Averett University's athletic training curriculum is designed to prepare students for careers in athletic training. This curriculum stresses strong liberal arts and science foundation with clinical and problem solving development. The program requires a pre-professional phase where students will be introduced into the clinical experiences that will be required in the curriculum. The Averett University athletic training curriculum emphasizes clinical instruction which utilizes different clinical sites on and off campus including the Averett University athletic training room, sports medicine/physical therapy clinics and medical doctors' offices. These settings will expose the student athletic trainer to different health professionals including certified athletic trainers, physical therapists, exercise physiologists, physical therapy assistants, and medical doctors. These diverse locations allow students to gain valuable experiences in a variety of athletic training settings.

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

		Semester Hours
BIO 101*	Introduction to Biology	4
BIO 204*	Human Anatomy and Physiology I	4
BIO 205*	Human Anatomy and Physiology II	4
HTH 110	Contemporary Health Problems	3
HTH 200	First Aid and Safety	3
HTH 320	Nutrition and Sports Performance	3
PE 209	Introduction to Athletic Training	3
PE 280	Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses	3
PE 315	Physiology of Activity	3
PE 320	Kinesiology or	3
PE 425	Biomechanics	
PE 360	Sports Medicine I	3
PE 360L	Sports Medicine I Lab	1
PE 365	Sport Psychology	3
PE 370	Therapeutic Exercise	3
PE 409	Advanced Athletic Training	2
PE 421	Sports Medicine II	3
PE 421L	Sports Medicine II Lab	1
PE 428	Graded Exercise Testing	3
PE 435	Therapeutic Modalities	3
PE 438	Administration of Athletic Training Programs	3
PE 444	Research Methods in Physical Education	3
PE 448	Prevention and Acute Care of Athletic Injuries	1
PE 449	Therapeutic Modalities and Pharmacology	1
PE 450	Assessment and Evaluation of Athletic Injuries and Pathologies	1
PE 451	Therapeutic Exercise for Athletic Training	1
PE 452	Administration/Psychosocial/Nutrition Issues in Athletic Training	1
		Total 63

*These courses satisfy general education science requirements.

A minimum Grade Point Average of 2.50 is required in the Athletic Training Program.

Students must also complete a minimum of 800 clinical hours once accepted into the athletic

training program. These clinical hours must be obtained under the supervision of an Approved Clinical Instructor, Clinical Supervisor, or allied health professional who is approved by the program director.

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Physical Education: Athletic Training

Freshman Year:

HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology*
PE 209, Introduction to Athletic Training

Sophomore Year:

BIO 204, Human Anatomy and Physiology I
BIO 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology II
PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses
PE 315, Physiology of Activity
PE 435, Therapeutic Modalities
PE 448, Prevention and Acute Care of Athletic Injuries

Junior Year:

HTH 320, Nutrition and Sports Performance
PE 320 or PE 425, Kinesiology or Biomechanics
PE 360 and 360L, Sports Medicine I and Lab
PE 365, Sports Psychology
PE 370, Therapeutic Exercise
PE 421 and 421L, Sports Medicine II and Lab
PE 449, Therapeutic Modalities and Pharmacology
PE 450, Assessment and Evaluation of Athletic Injuries and Pathologies

Senior Year:

PE 409, Advanced Athletic Training
PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing
PE 438, Administration of Athletic Training Programs
PE 444, Research Methods in Physical Education
PE 451, Therapeutic Exercise for Athletic Training
PE 452, Administration/Psychosocial/Nutrition Issues in Athletic Training

Admission to Program

The athletic training education program is a very competitive and selective major. Students wishing to major in athletic training must meet **all** of the admission standards prior to being interviewed by the selection committee. The students will be selected into the program based on the number of student athletic trainer positions available, their academic achievements, and performances on their essay and interview. The application to be accepted into the athletic training curriculum at Averett University will be submitted in the fall semester of a **prospective student's sophomore school year**. There is a pre-professional phase in which students must meet certain requirements (listed below) in order to be allowed into the Averett University Athletic Training Program. Students should contact the Program Director to get details regarding this application process.

Transfer students must meet the same requirements for acceptance. The course work must be equivalent to the Averett University curriculum and must meet all transfer acceptance requirements as set forth by the Averett University Registrar's office. The observation hours should be attained under a certified athletic trainer. These students will be considered on an individual basis with special circumstances given proper evaluation.

The student must complete the course work listed below in addition to:

- Read and sign technical standards of acceptance, submit a written application and attach resume
- Complete at least 80 hours of observation under Clinical Supervisor
- Complete Averett University student observation skill sheet
- Have a cumulative GPA of 2.5 or higher and a GPA of 3.0 or higher in the courses listed below
- Submit essay to Program Director
- Hold and maintain current First Aid/ CPR certifications
- Complete Physical Examination
- Complete the Hepatitis B Immunization or signing a declination form
- Complete Observation Skill Sheet
- Have Clinical Supervisor complete Student Evaluation

***The Program Director must receive all materials no later than November 1st or the previous weekday if November 1st falls on the weekend or a holiday.**

These courses must be completed prior to admission to the student athletic training program. The student must earn a grade of B or better in each of these courses:

PE 209 Introduction to Athletic Training
HTH 200 First Aid/ Safety
HTH 110 Contemporary Health Issues

*The students who meet the above criteria in the application process will be interviewed by the members of the athletic training selection committee. The interviews will begin approximately two weeks after November 1st. The students will then be selected based on the number of student athletic trainer positions available and their performances in their course work, interview and essay.

Students interested in athletic training should contact the curriculum director.

Technical Standards of Acceptance

The Athletic Training Program at Averett University is a rigorous and intense program that places specific requirements and demands on the students enrolled in the program. An objective of this program is to prepare graduates to enter a variety of employment settings and to render care to a wide spectrum of individuals engaged in physical activity. The technical standards set forth by the Athletic Training Program establish the essential qualities considered necessary for students admitted to this program to achieve the knowledge, skills, and competencies of an entry-level athletic trainer, as well as meet the expectations of the program's accrediting agency, the Commission on Accreditation of Allied Health Education Programs (CAAHEP). The following abilities and expectations must be met by all students admitted to the Athletic Training Program. In the event a student is unable to fulfill these technical standards, with or without reasonable accommodation, the student will not be admitted to the program.

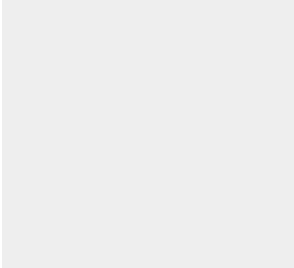
Compliance with the program's technical standards does not guarantee a student's eligibility for the NATABOC certification exam.

Candidates for selection to the Athletic Training Program must demonstrate:

1. the mental capacity to assimilate, analyze, synthesize, and integrate concepts and problem solve to formulate assessment and therapeutic judgments and to be able to distinguish deviations from the norm;
2. sufficient postural and neuromuscular control, sensory function, and coordination to perform appropriate physical examinations using accepted techniques; and accurately, safely and efficiently use equipment and materials during the assessment and treatment of patients;
3. the ability to communicate effectively and sensitively with patients and colleagues, including individuals from different cultural and social backgrounds; this includes, but is not limited to, the ability to establish rapport with patients and communicate judgments and treatment information effectively. Students must be able to understand and speak the English language at a level consistent with competent professional practice;
4. the ability to record the physical examination results and a treatment plan clearly and accurately;
5. the capacity to maintain composure and continue to function well during periods of high stress;
6. the perseverance, diligence and commitment to complete the athletic training education program as outlined and sequenced;
7. flexibility and the ability to adjust to changing situations and uncertainty in clinical situations;
8. affective skills and appropriate demeanor and rapport that relate to professional education and quality patient care.

Candidates for selection to the athletic training program will be required to verify that they understand and meet these technical standards or that they believe that, with certain accommodations, they can meet the standards.

The Athletic Training Technical Standards Committee will evaluate a student who states he/she could meet the program's technical standards with accommodation and confirm that the stated condition qualifies as a disability under applicable laws.



If a student states he/she can meet the technical standards with accommodation, then the University will determine whether it agrees that the student can meet the technical standards with reasonable accommodation; this includes a review of whether the accommodations requested are reasonable, taking into account whether accommodations would jeopardize clinician/patient safety, or the educational process of the student or the institution, including all coursework, clinical experiences and internships deemed essential to graduation.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

> Physical Education, Wellness
and Sport Science
> Courses of Instruction
> Minor in Physical Education
> Minor in Coaching

> Teaching License
> Sport Management
Concentration
> Wellness/Sports Medicine
Concentration
> Athletic Training Program
> **Golf Management
Concentration**

PHYSICAL EDUCATION, WELLNESS AND SPORT SCIENCE (PE)

Requirements for a Major in Physical Education: Golf Management Concentration

The Golf Management Program is designed to prepare students to enter the golf industry. The curriculum includes a variety of course offerings in sport science, golf skill instruction, pro shop management and business. In addition to the regular course work, students will also receive practical experience through three internships under the supervision of PGA professionals.

In addition to [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

		Semester Hours
PE 190	Customizing and Maintenance of Golf Clubs	2
PE 191	Golf Shop Management	1
PE 207	Introduction to Sport Management	3
PE 214	Methods of Teaching Golf Skills I	1
PE 280	Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses	3
PE 314	Methods of Teaching Golf Skills II	1
PE 315	Physiology of Activity	3
PE 320	Kinesiology	3
PE 365	Sport Psychology	3
PE 415	Motor Learning	3
PE 425	Biomechanics	3
PE 447	Golf Practicum	9
(Must be completed in three ten-week placements for 3 semester hours for each placement)		
BSA 221	Principles of Accounting I	3
BSA 222	Principles of Accounting II	3
BSA 305	Principles of Management	3
BSA 310	Principles of Marketing	3
BSA 353	Entrepreneurship	3
CSS 113	Microcomputers and Application Software	3
		Total 53

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Physical Education: Golf Management

Freshman Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software
PE 190, Customizing and Maintenance of Golf Clubs

Sophomore Year:

PE 191, Golf Shop Management
PE 214, Methods of Teaching Golf Skills I
PE 207, Introduction to Sport Management
PE 447, Golf Practicum
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I
BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II

Junior Year:

PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses
PE 314, Methods of Teaching Golf Skills II
PE 315, Physiology of Activity
PE 320, Kinesiology
PE 447, Golf Practicum
BSA 305, Principles of Management
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing

Senior Year:

PE 365, Sport Psychology
PE 415, Motor Learning
PE 425, Biomechanics
PE 447, Golf Practicum
BSA 353, Entrepreneurship

Activity courses may be repeated for a maximum of 4 semester hours credit unless otherwise indicated.

Physical Education majors must fulfill activity course requirements by taking different activities.

Extra fees are charged for some activities. Courses which normally require such fees are indicated

by an asterisk (*) following the course name.

Students may take a maximum of two activity courses in any semester.

101, Swimming for Non-Swimmers* (2)

(May not be repeated for credit.)

102, Swimming* (2)

102103, Novice Riding (same as ES102) (2)

106, Physical Conditioning (2)

107, Bowling* (2)

108, Jogging (2)

(May not be repeated for credit.)

111, Archery (2)

114, Tennis (2)

116, Golf* (2)

126, Weight Training (2)

127, Marksmanship (2)

128, Badminton (2)

139, Yoga (2)

130, Exercise Walking (2)

133, Racquetball (2)

134, Softball (2)

135, Basketball (2)

136, Volleyball (2)

150, Selected Activities (2)

152, Aerobics (1)

(May be repeated for maximum of 3 hours.)

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Political Science](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> History and Politics](#)
[> Minor](#)



POLITICAL SCIENCE (POS)

Dr. Steven D. Wray
 Dr. Darcy Wudel, *Coordinator*

The Political Science major provides students with a broad education in politics and government. Students who graduate from the Political Science program will become familiar with American government, with other forms of government, and with the interactions among governments. Students will gain an appreciation of ancient and modern political thought, as well as American political thought. Political Science students will, while undertaking the program, acquire the speaking, writing, and other skills fundamental to work in various occupations connected with politics. The Political Science major thus aims to prepare students to work in government (local, state, or federal), in the nonprofit sector, and in business. It is also sound preparation for post-graduate study in law and public administration.

Courses in Political Science are applicable towards a [teaching license in History/Social Science](#). Besides teacher licensure, these courses may be used to support other areas of study.

In order to graduate, all Political Science majors must sit for an exit interview and must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major.

Requirements for a Major in Political Science:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
POS 131 The World of Politics	3
POS 215 American National Government	3
POS 216 State and Local Government	1
POS 311 Comparative Government	3
POS 343 Ancient Political Thought	3
POS 344 Modern Political Thought	3
POS 380 International Relations	3
Choose one of the following courses:	3
POS/ Environmental Policy and Law	
BIO/ ENS 342	
JR 330 Media Law and Ethics	
POS/ Constitutional Law	
CRJ 411	

Choose one of the following courses: 3
 POS 445 Internship
 BSA 326 Organizational Behavior, Theory, & Leadership
 CSS 203 Introduction to Statistics
 PSY 412 Industrial/Organizational Psychology

Choose one of the following courses: 3
 POS/ Political Development
 HIS 455
 HIS 406 Twentieth Century Europe, Post-War Divisions and Unions
 HIS 410 Twentieth Century U.S. History
 POS/ Diplomatic History of the United States Since 1898
 HIS 414
 Political Science electives

6
 Total 34

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Political Science

Freshman Year:

POS 131, The World of Politics **and/or**
 POS 215, American National Government
 POS 216, State and Local Government

Sophomore Year:

POS 311, Comparative Government
 POS 380, International Relations
 Political science elective

Junior Year:

POS 343, Ancient Political Thought
 POS 344, Modern Political Thought
 POS/BIO/ENS 342, Environmental Policy and Law **or**
 JR 330, Media Law and Ethics **or**
 POS/CRJ 411, Constitutional Law

Senior Year:

POS 445, Internship **or**
 CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics **or**
 BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory, and Leadership **or**
 PSY 412, Industrial/Organizational Psychology
 HIS/POS 455, Political Development **or**
 HIS 406, Twentieth Century Europe, Post-War Divisions and Unions **or**
 HIS 410, Twentieth Century U.S. History **OR**
 HIS/POS 414, Diplomatic History of the United States Since 1898
 Political Science elective

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Political Science](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> History and Politics](#)

[> Minor](#)

POLITICAL SCIENCE (POS)

Minor

A minor in Political Science is available to the student who completes 18 semester hours of course work in Political Science, 9 of which must be at the 300-400 level.

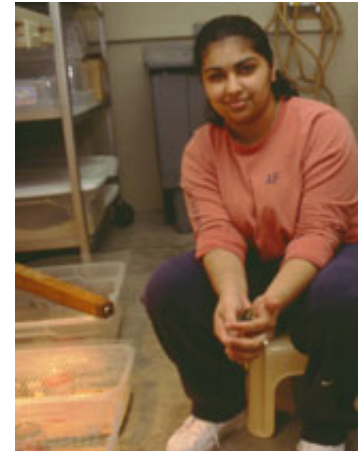
Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Psychology](#)
[> Course Descriptions](#)
[> Core Requirements](#)
[> Human-Computer
Interaction Program](#)

[> Biological Psychology](#)
[> Counseling and Clinical](#)
[> Cognitive Science](#)
[> Industrial/Organizational](#)
[> Minor](#)

PSYCHOLOGY (PSY)



Dr. Robert M. Carlsen
 Dr. Anna D. Hatten, *Chair*
 Dr. Jean L. Hatten
 Dr. David I. Rosenberg

Psychology is the scientific study of the behavior of individuals. As a science, psychology works to discover the causes of behavior and to determine how and why individuals act the way they do. People who become psychologists apply the findings of scientific psychology to improve human welfare in schools, in clinical settings, and/or in the workplace. Psychologists are uniquely suited to address societal issues by finding ways of addressing human problems, by developing knowledge and technology, and by educating people to be productive citizens and effective professionals.

The Department of Psychology at Averett University provides students with an understanding of psychology that enables them to meet the challenges of their personal and professional lives. We develop students who are professionally competent, sensitive to cultural and individual differences, ethical, self-directed, and prepared to pursue their career goals. In addition to learning the facts and theories of psychology, our students contribute to the field through participation in professional activities, both in research and in the application of psychological findings to promote human welfare in the community.

The psychology curriculum develops students who are able to think critically and analytically about problems, to apply knowledge to implement solutions, and to utilize the technical skills essential to success in contemporary society. Graduates of our program are prepared for graduate education in psychology or related fields and for careers in community agencies or in any profession where an understanding of human behavior is an asset.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

Requirements for a Major in Psychology:

The Psychology Department offers a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree to the student who completes the following courses in addition to the [general education requirements](#):

Introductory level course (3-4 hours)
 PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science

Semester
Hours

3

	or	
PSY 120	Psychology as a Natural Science	4
Survey courses (12 hours)		
PSY 200	Effective Behavior	3
PSY 323	Learning	3
Two additional courses chosen from outside of the student's chosen area of concentration.		6
Methods courses (13 hours)		
CSS 203	Introduction to Statistics	3
PSY 288	Computing in Psychology	2
PSY 333	Research Practicum I	2
PSY 334	Research Practicum II	3
PSY 338	Research Design	3
Integrated senior year experience (6 - 9 hours)		
PSY 445	History and Systems	3
PSY 446	Senior Seminar in Psychology	3
PSY 465	Senior Research (optional)	3
Areas of concentration (12 hours)		
Students must complete four courses selected from at least one of the following areas of concentration:		
<u>Biological Psychology</u>		
<u>Counseling and Clinical</u>		
<u>Cognitive Science</u>		
<u>Industrial/Organizational</u>		

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Psychology](#)

> [Course Descriptions](#)

> [Core Requirements](#)

> **[Human-Computer
Interaction Program](#)**

> [Biological Psychology](#)

> [Counseling and Clinical](#)

> [Cognitive Science](#)

> [Industrial/Organizational](#)

> [Minor](#)

PSYCHOLOGY (PSY)

Human-Computer Interaction Program

Averett University offers a [HCI program](#) for students choosing as their primary major either art, computer science, computer information systems, or psychology. The program is administered by the department of psychology in consultation with an advisory committee composed of faculty members drawn from each of the contributing departments.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Psychology](#)
[> Course Descriptions](#)
[> Core Requirements](#)
[> Human-Computer
Interaction Program](#)

[> **Biological Psychology**](#)
[> Counseling and Clinical](#)
[> Cognitive Science](#)
[> Industrial/Organizational](#)
[> Minor](#)

PSYCHOLOGY (PSY)

Requirements for a Major in Psychology: Biological Psychology

In addition to [core requirements for the psychology major](#) students with a concentration in biological psychology take:

Psychology: Biological Psychology

	Semester Hours
PSY 205 Developmental Psychology	3
PSY 315 Physiological Psychology	3
PSY 387 Sensation and Perception	3
PSY 395 Animal Behavior	3

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Psychology: Biological Psychology

Freshman Year:

PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science (fall and spring)
 and/or
 PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science (fall and spring)
 PSY Elective (200 level)

Sophomore Year:

CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics (fall and spring)
 PSY 200, Effective Behavior (spring)
 PSY 205, Developmental Psychology (fall, spring, and summer)

Junior Year:

PSY 288, Computing in Psychology (fall)
 PSY 333, Research Practicum I (fall)
 PSY 338, Research Design (fall)
 PSY 323, Learning (fall)
 PSY 315, Physiological Psychology
 PSY 333, Research Practicum I
 PSY 334, Research Practicum II (spring)
 PSY 373, Memory and Cognition

Senior Year:

PSY 445, History and Systems (fall)
 PSY 465, Senior Research (enroll in fall only)
 PSY 387, Sensation and Perception
 PSY 395, Animal Behavior
 PSY 446, Senior Seminar in Psychology (spring)

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Psychology](#)
[> Course Descriptions](#)
[> Core Requirements](#)
[> Human-Computer
Interaction Program](#)

[> Biological Psychology](#)
[> **Counseling and Clinical**](#)
[> Cognitive Science](#)
[> Industrial/Organizational](#)
[> Minor](#)

PSYCHOLOGY (PSY)

Requirements for a Major in Psychology: Counseling and Clinical

In addition to [core requirements for the psychology major](#) students with a concentration in counseling and clinical psychology take:

Psychology: Counseling and Clinical

	Semester Hours
PSY 305 Abnormal Psychology	3
PSY 309 Personality Theory	3
PSY 325 Helping Relations	3
PSY 466 Psychological Measurements	3

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Psychology: Counseling and Clinical

Freshman Year:

PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science (fall and spring)
 and/or
 PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science (fall and spring)
 PSY Elective (200 level or above)

Sophomore Year:

CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics (fall and spring)
 PSY 200, Effective Behavior
 PSY Elective

Junior Year:

PSY 288, Computing in Psychology (fall)
 PSY 323, Learning (fall)
 PSY 333, Research Practicum I (fall)
 PSY 338, Research Design (fall)
 PSY 325, Helping Relations (fall)
 PSY 305, Abnormal Psychology (fall)
 PSY 309, Personality Theory (spring)
 PSY 334, Research Practicum II (spring)
 PSY 373, Memory and Cognition

Senior Year:

PSY 425, Field Education in Psychology
 PSY 445, History and Systems (fall)
 PSY 465, Senior Research (fall)
 PSY 446, Senior Seminar in Psychology (spring)
 PSY 466, Psychological Measurements (spring)

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> Psychology
> Course Descriptions
> Core Requirements
> Human-Computer
Interaction Program

> Biological Psychology
> Counseling and Clinical
> **Cognitive Science**
> Industrial/Organizational
> Minor

PSYCHOLOGY (PSY)

Requirements for a Major in Psychology: Cognitive Science

In addition to [core requirements for the psychology major](#) students with a concentration in cognitive science take:

Psychology: Cognitive Science

	Semester Hours
PSY 232 Designing User-centered Web Sites	3
PSY 332 Evaluating Web Site Usability	3
PSY 373 Memory and Cognition	3
PSY 387 Sensation and Perception	3

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

Psychology: Cognitive Science

Freshman Year:

PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science (fall and spring)
and/or
PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science (fall and spring)
PSY Elective (200 level or above)
PSY 232, Designing User-centered Web Sites (fall)

Sophomore Year:

CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics (fall and spring)
PSY 200, Effective Behavior

Junior Year:

PSY 288, Computing in Psychology (fall)
PSY 323, Learning (fall)
PSY 333, Research Practicum I (fall)
PSY 338, Research Design (fall)
PSY 373, Memory and Cognition
PSY 332, Evaluating Web Site Usability (spring)
PSY 334, Research Practicum II (spring)
PSY Elective (300-400 level)

Senior Year:

PSY 445, History and Systems (fall)
PSY 465, Senior Research (enroll in fall only)
PSY 446, Senior Seminar in Psychology (spring)
PSY 387, Sensation and Perception

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Psychology](#)
 > [Course Descriptions](#)
 > [Core Requirements](#)
 > [Human-Computer
Interaction Program](#)

> [Biological Psychology](#)
 > [Counseling and Clinical](#)
 > [Cognitive Science](#)
 > **[Industrial/
Organizational](#)**
 > [Minor](#)

PSYCHOLOGY (PSY)

Requirements for a Major in Psychology: Industrial/Organizational

In addition to [core requirements for the psychology major](#) students with a concentration in industrial/organizational psychology take:

	Semester Hours
Psychology: Industrial/Organizational	
POS 325 Perspectives on Leadership	3
PSY 412 Industrial/Organizational Psychology	3
BSA 445 Seminar in Managerial Skills Development	3
PSY 466 Psychological Measurements	<u>3</u>

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

Psychology: Industrial/Organizational

Freshman Year:

PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science (fall and spring)
 and/or
 PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science (fall and spring)
 PSY Elective (200 level or above)

Sophomore Year:

CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics (fall and spring)
 PSY 200, Effective Behavior
 PSY Elective

Junior Year:

PSY 288, Computing in Psychology (fall)
 PSY 323, Learning (fall)
 PSY 333, Research Practicum I (fall)
 PSY 338, Research Design (fall)
 PSY 334, Research Practicum II (spring)
 PSY 466, Psychological Measurements
 PSY 375, Memory and Cognition

Senior Year:

PSY 445, History and Systems (fall)
 PSY 465, Senior Research (enroll in fall only)
 PSY 466, Psychological Measurements
 PSY 446, Senior Seminar in Psychology (spring)
 PSY 412, Industrial/Organizational Psychology
 BSA 445, Seminar in Managerial Skills Development

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> Psychology
> Course Descriptions
> Core Requirements
> Human-Computer
Interaction Program

> Biological Psychology
> Counseling and Clinical
> Cognitive Science
> Industrial/Organizational
> **Minor**

PSYCHOLOGY (PSY)

Minor

The student who elects a minor in Psychology must complete 18 semester hours of psychology courses, including at least 9 semester hours at the 300 level or above.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Religion](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> In-Service Guidance](#)
[> Minor](#)

RELIGION (REL)

Dr. John Charles Hugh Laughlin, *Chair*
 Dr. William L. Trimyer
 Dr. Jeffrey A. Fager

Recognizing the individual and the particular needs of the individual, the Religion program at Averett University is designed to prepare the student for continuing seminary/graduate study or for an immediate career in Christian ministry.

The Religion program attempts to combine classroom learning with actual field experience so that the graduate is both intellectually equipped and practically trained in his/her profession. The Bachelor of Arts in Religion is the basic degree and is designed primarily for students moving toward the practice of ministry. The student may elect to complete 6 hours of Greek and 6 hours of Hebrew to satisfy the foreign language requirement for any of these majors.

Most summers, students have a unique opportunity to participate in an archaeological excavation in the Holy Land. For several years, the College was a co-sponsor of a "dig" in Capernaum under the direction of Dr. Vassilius Tzaferis of the Israel Antiquities Authority and the University of Haifa. In 1988 the project moved to Baniyas (Caesarea Philippi) to initiate a new site. Persons interested in this summer program, for which academic credit may be earned, should communicate with Dr. John Laughlin at Averett University for further information.

Requirements for a Major in Religion:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
REL 101 Introduction to Old Testament Literature	3
REL 102 Introduction to New Testament Literature	3
PHL 150 Introduction to Philosophy	3
REL 403 History of Christianity	3
REL 465 Senior Research Thesis	1
One advanced Old Testament course	3
One advanced New Testament course	3
One of the following	3
REL 201 Religions of the World	
REL 260 Religion in America	
REL 306 African-American Religions	
One of the following:	3
PHL 210 Ethics	
PHL 440 Philosophy of Religion	
Religion or Philosophy electives at 300-400 level	<u>9</u>
	Total 34

Exit Requirement

All Religion majors are required to enroll in REL 465, Senior Research Thesis, during their senior year. The student will write a research project which may grow out of a research paper he/she has already prepared. This project will be supervised by the appropriate professor and must receive a passing grade from an outside reader. The length of the thesis will be between 40-50 pages exclusive of bibliography.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:
Religion**

Freshman Year:

REL 101, Introduction to Old Testament
REL 102, Introduction to New Testament

Sophomore Year:

PHL 150, Introduction to Philosophy
REL 201, or 260, or 306, Religions of the World or
Religion in America or
African-American Religions

Junior Year:

PHL 210 or PHL 440, Ethics or
REL 300-400 level course in New Testament
REL/PHL Elective, 300-400 level

Senior Year:

REL 300-400 level course in Old Testament
REL 403, History of Christianity
REL/PHL Elective, 300-400 level (2)

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Religion](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> **In-Service Guidance**](#)
[> Minor](#)

RELIGION (REL)

In-Service Guidance

Each student receives professional training under a certified supervisor in an area related to the student's future vocational goals. The objectives of these in-service experiences are:

To prepare the student for leadership roles in local churches, chaplaincies, denominations, and related institutions.

To establish better lines of communication between ministers/churches and the campus so that the student will be able to identify more easily with specific forms of ministry.

To introduce the student to capable leaders within his/her denomination who satisfactorily demonstrate effective professional leadership.

To acquaint students as thoroughly as possible with organizational structures and procedures of local churches, denominational agencies and institutions.

To promote opportunities for students to evaluate their commitments and to develop their innate abilities; to develop desirable interests, attitudes, ideas, and techniques of ministry through self-direction and self-evaluation; to experience ministry and mission principles and methodology on the job under qualified supervision; to evaluate their ministry and mission experience through interaction with professors and career ministers on the campus.

All ministerial students receiving ministerial discounts at Averett University are required to take in-service guidance courses which will add 9 hours to any major offered by the Department of Religion. Those courses include REL 255, Ministry Formations and REL 453 and 454, Internship I, II.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Religion](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> In-Service Guidance](#)

[> **Minor**](#)

RELIGION (REL)

Minor

Students electing a minor in Religion must complete the following: REL 101, 102, and 12 additional hours selected from Religion or Philosophy (9 of the 12 additional hours must be at the 300-400 level).

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

> **Sociology**
> Courses of Instruction

> Sociology/Criminal Justice
> Minor



SOCIOLOGY (SOC)

Dr. Rebecca L. Clark
Dr. Laura L. Hartman
Dr. Steve Wray, *Chair*

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology is a four-year program at Averett University. The curriculum in Sociology ensures that each student is provided with a strong foundation in the basic principles, techniques of analysis, and theories for understanding and working with the important aspects of social life in the contemporary world. The program gives students an appreciation of their own social world, a broader understanding of different ways of life, and a more complete perspective of the world and their place in it. Courses focus on the study of the structure and changes of social life and relationships, and on contemporary issues in areas such as the family, crime, religion, race and ethnic relations, urban communities, aging, gender roles, and law. The program prepares students for careers in government employment, secondary teaching, social services, and research with agencies in industry and business. It also enables students to work as data analysts, office managers, sales directors, labor managers, city planning directors, police officers, parks and recreation directors, community organizers, social workers, management consultants, advertising executives, and insurance agents. Supervised internships are available in community agencies and organizations to allow students to test their ideas about careers and examine the realities of a professional occupation.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

Requirements for a Major in Sociology:

In addition to the [general education requirements](#), the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
SOC 101 Introduction to Sociology	3
SOC 401 Social Theory	3
SOC 440 Senior Seminar	3
SOC 470 Research Methods	3
Sociology Electives	15
CSS 203 Introduction to Statistics	3
	Total 30

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Sociology

Freshman Year:

SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology

Sophomore Year:

CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics

SOC Recommended Elective

SOC Recommended Elective

Junior Year:

SOC Recommended Elective

SOC 300+ Elective

Senior Year:

SOC 401, Social Theory

SOC 470, Research Methods

SOC 440, Senior Seminar

SOC 300+ Elective

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Sociology](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> **Sociology/Criminal
Justice**](#)

[> Minor](#)

SOCIOLOGY (SOC)

Sociology/Criminal Justice

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice is a four-year program at Averett University and requires courses in Sociology and in Criminal Justice.

Specific course requirements for the Sociology/Criminal Justice Programs (4-year program and 2+2 program) may be found in the [Criminal Justice](#) section of the catalog.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Sociology](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> Sociology/Criminal Justice](#)

[> **Minor**](#)

SOCIOLOGY (SOC)

Minor

Students electing a minor in Sociology must complete SOC 101 plus 15 hours in Sociology (9 hours must be at the 300-400 level).

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

Financial Information

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

> **Spanish**
> Courses of Instruction

> Liberal Studies: Teaching
License Majors
> Minor
> Pass/Fail Option

SPANISH (SPA)

Dr. Barbara A. Clark, *Chair*

The modern language program is proficiency-based; that is, students learn skills which help them to function in the language. The goal at each level is to help the student advance to the next level of proficiency.

Placement

Students who wish to begin the study of Spanish for the first time are not required to sit for the placement exercise.

All students with two or more years of high school credit, or transfers with college credit who intend to continue their study of Spanish at Averett, must sit for the placement exercise. Students are encouraged to do as well as possible. A low score may result in the placement of the student in a lower level class for remedial purposes. No credit hours will be earned. See section on [placement tests](#).

Those students whose records indicate successful completion of three or more years of Spanish within the past two years should, depending upon the results of the placement exercise, expect to be placed in 201 or a higher level course.

Opportunities for study in countries where the Spanish language prevails are available, and arrangements may be made with the Spanish instructor.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Spanish](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> **Liberal Studies:**](#)

[**Teaching License Majors**](#)

[> Minor](#)

[> Pass/Fail Option](#)

SPANISH (SPA)

Liberal Studies: Teaching License Majors

Students who plan to earn a teaching license in grades PK-6 may choose a concentration in Spanish as one of two concentration areas required for licensure. This concentration consists of SPA 221 and 222 or 315 and 316 or 317, depending upon placement.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Spanish](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> Liberal Studies: Teaching
License Majors](#)
[> **Minor**](#)
[> Pass/Fail Option](#)

SPANISH (SPA)

Minor

A minor in Spanish is available to students who satisfactorily complete SPA 221, 222, 315, and 316 or 317 and all prerequisite courses.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Spanish](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> Liberal Studies: Teaching
License Majors](#)

[> Minor](#)

[> **Pass/Fail Option**](#)

SPANISH (SPA)

Pass/Fail Option

Elective Spanish courses may be taken Pass/Fail if they are not used to fulfill a general education requirement. For example, students who minor in French, who seek a B.A. degree or who choose a Spanish course to fulfill the cultural component may not choose the Pass/Fail option.

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> **Theatre**
 > Courses of Instruction
 > Minor

> Theatre With Teaching License
 > English/Theatre
 > Speech Endorsement



THEATRE (TH)

Mr. Richard Breen
 Mr. Jackie Finney, *Chair*
 Ms. Penny Sornberger

The Averett University Department of Theatre has dedicated itself to the teaching of the practice of theatre, in all of its aspects, and to the growth and development of this discipline in those students who have expressed an interest in the theatre arts. Students in the department bring with them a variety of backgrounds and experiences, both acting and technical, and it becomes the goal of the department to enhance those experiences into an ensemble effort, creating a sense of teamwork and mutual interdependence.

The Theatre Department supports the University's mission of developing students who communicate clearly, think critically, have a global perspective and are lifelong learners by offering academic courses that fulfill the General Education requirements of the University. The department also recognizes, and strives to fulfill, its responsibilities as a cultural center for the University and the surrounding community by presenting a series of professionally-staged theatre productions throughout the school year.

Upon graduation each major should exhibit the skills and background necessary to enter successfully into a graduate program of study or into an entry-level professional position.

All theatre majors must complete a senior project prior to graduation. In addition, students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

Requirements for a Major in Theatre:

In addition to the general [education requirements](#) for a Bachelor of Arts degree, the following courses are required:

		Semester Hours
TH 101	Voice and Diction	3
TH 105	Introduction to the Theatre	3
TH 110	Theatre Practicum (must repeat for 4 hours credit)	4
TH 133	Acting I or	6
TH 233	Acting II or	
TH 333	Acting III or	

TH 433	Acting IV	
TH 220	History of the Theatre I	3
TH 221	History of the Theatre II	3
TH 251	Stagecraft I	3
TH 252	Stagecraft II	3
TH 340	Theatre Design	3
TH 401	Play Directing I	3
TH 410	Modern Drama	3
TH 462	Senior Seminar	3
ENG 414/ TH 414	Shakespeare	3
	Theatre Electives	<u>6</u>

(3 hours must be at the 300 level or above)

Total 49

All students majoring in Theatre are required to serve as Stage Manager for at least one major drama production and to serve as chairperson at least once for each production crew (e.g. makeup, lighting, costumes, deck, and house management).

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Theatre

Freshman Year:

TH, 101, 220 **or** 221, Voice and Diction **or**
History of the Theatre I **or**
History of the Theatre II
TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre
TH 133 **or** Acting I **or** Acting II
TH 251 **or** 252, Stagecraft I **or**
Stagecraft II
TH 110, Theatre Practicum

Sophomore Year:

TH 220 **or** 221, History of the Theatre I **or**
History of the Theatre II
TH 233 **or** 333, Acting II **or** Acting III
TH 251 **or** 252, Stagecraft I **or**
Theatre Elective

Junior Year:

TH 333 **or** 433 **or** 340, Acting III **or**
Acting IV **or**
Theatre Design
ENG 414/TH 414, Shakespeare
TH 110, Theatre Practicum
TH 220 **or** 221, History of the Theatre I **or**
History of the Theatre II
TH 401 **or** 402, Play Directing I **or**
Play Directing II
Theatre Elective

Senior Year:

TH 410, Modern Drama
TH 110, Theatre Practicum
TH 333 **or** 433 **or** 340, Acting III **or**
Acting IV **or** Theatre Design
TH 401 **or** 402, Play Directing I **or**
Play Directing II
TH 462, Senior Seminar
Theatre Elective

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Theatre](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> **Minor**](#)

[> Theatre With Teaching License](#)
[> English/Theatre](#)
[> Speech Endorsement](#)

THEATRE (TH)

Minor

Students electing a minor in Theatre must complete 18 semester hours from courses listed under Theatre, 9 of which must be at the 300 or 400 level.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

[> Theatre](#)
[> Courses of Instruction](#)
[> Minor](#)

[> Theatre With Teaching License](#)
[> English/Theatre](#)
[> Speech Endorsement](#)

THEATRE (TH)

Requirements for a Major in Theatre With Teaching License

Students may earn a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree in Theatre with Teaching License.

		Semester Hours
TH 101	Voice and Diction	3
TH 105	Introduction to the Theatre	3
TH 110	Theatre Practicum (must repeat for 4 hours credit)	4
TH 133	Acting I or	
TH 233	Acting II or	
TH 333	Acting III or	
TH 433	Acting IV	6
TH 205	Creative Dramatics for the Classroom Teacher	3
TH 210	Oral Interpretation of Literature	3
TH 220	History of the Theatre I	3
TH 221	History of the Theatre II	3
TH 251	Stagecraft I	3
TH 252	Stagecraft II	3
TH 340	Theatre Design	3
TH 401	Play Directing I	3
TH 402	Play Directing II	3
TH 410	Modern Drama	3
TH 440	Advanced Design	3
TH 462	Senior Seminar	3
ENG 414/ TH 414	Shakespeare	<u>3</u>

Total 55

Other [General Education](#) and [Professional Education](#) requirements must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)

> Theatre
> Courses of Instruction
> Minor

> Theatre With Teaching License
> **English/Theatre**
> Speech Endorsement

THEATRE (TH)

Requirements for a Major in English/Theatre With or Without Teaching License

The Bachelor of Arts degree in English/Theatre is designed primarily for students who wish to be certified to teach both English and Theatre in secondary schools. Some students interested in pursuing graduate degrees in either or both fields also select the English/Theatre degree.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required: (Students seeking teaching licensure must also complete required [professional education](#) courses.)

	Semester Hours
ENG 201 Major British Authors, through 18th Century	3
ENG 202 Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries	3
ENG 210 Oral Interpretation of Literature	3
ENG 390 Origins and Structure of English	3
ENG 406 The Romantic Movement in American Literature	3
ENG 407 American Literature: The Gilded Age to WWII	3
ENG 410 Modern Drama	3
ENG 414/ TH 414 Shakespeare	3
ENG 421 Teaching Composition	3
ENG 470 Literature for Children	3
English Elective	3
TH 101 Voice and Diction	3
TH 110 Theatre Practicum (must repeat for 3 hours credit)	3
TH 133 Acting I or	
TH 233 Acting II or	
TH 333 Acting III or	
TH 433 Acting IV	6
TH 205 Creative Dramatics for the Classroom Teacher	3
TH 220 History of the Theatre I or	
TH 221 History of the Theatre II	3
TH 251 Stagecraft I	3
TH 252 Stagecraft II	3
TH 340 Theatre Design	3
TH 401 Play Directing I	3
	Total 60

Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: English/Theatre with Teacher Licensure

Freshman Year:

ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature
TH 101, **or** 220 **or** 221, Voice and Diction **or**
History of the Theatre I **or**
History of the Theatre II
TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre
TH 133 **or** 233, Acting I **or**
Acting II
TH 251 or 252, Stagecraft I **or** Stagecraft II
TH 110, Theatre Practicum

Sophomore Year:

ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century
ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries
English Elective
TH 101, **or** 220 or 221, Voice and Diction **or**

History of the Theatre I **or** History of the Theatre II
TH 233 **or** 333, Acting II **or**
Acting III
TH 251 **or** 252, Stagecraft I **or**
Stagecraft II
TH 205, Creative Dramatics for the Classroom Teacher
TH 110, Theatre Practicum

Junior Year:

ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English
ENG 406, Romantic Movement in American Literature
ENG 407, American Literature: The Gilded Age to World War II
TH 340, Theatre Design
ENG 414, Shakespeare **or**
TH 410, Modern Drama
TH 110, Theatre Practicum
TH 401 **or** 402, Play Directing I **or**
Play Directing II

Senior Year:

ENG 414, Shakespeare **or**
TH 410, Modern Drama
ENG 421, Teaching Composition
ENG 470, Literature for Children
TH 333 **or** 433 **or** 340, Acting III **or**
Acting IV **or** Theatre Design

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Theatre](#)

[> Courses of Instruction](#)

[> Minor](#)

[> Theatre With Teaching License](#)

[> English/Theatre](#)

[> **Speech Endorsement**](#)

THEATRE (TH)

Teacher Licensure: **Speech Endorsement**

Students seeking this endorsement must have a primary license in another field to which an endorsement in Speech may be added. The requirements for an add-on endorsement in Speech are listed below:

		Semester Hours
TH 101	Voice and Diction	3
TH 205	Creative Dramatics	3
TH 210	Oral Interpretation of Literature	3
TH 300	Public Speaking	<u>3</u>
		Total 12

TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication, is included in core requirements.

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

Student Life

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> **Student Life**
> Athletics and Leisure
Activities

> Student Organizations
> Student Services



STUDENT LIFE

It is the goal of the University to create a community in which the student can grow intellectually, emotionally, physically, socially and spiritually, thus preparing the student for lifelong learning. Therefore, student life at Averett is designed to offer a wide range of personal, social, cultural, religious, and athletic opportunities to complement academic studies. At the core of Averett's student life program are the elements which contribute to a better community: common purpose, sense of belonging, shared responsibility, interdependence, communication, interaction, pride, and commitment to the group.

Religious Life

As an institution of higher education related to the Baptist General Association of Virginia, Averett seeks to foster an environment where life and faith concerns can be explored and nurtured. In an atmosphere of Christian care and support, students are provided with opportunities to explore their individual pilgrimage of faith and to express their faith both publicly and privately. Averett values religious freedom and welcomes diversity as a means for broadening minds and enriching dialogue.

The Baptist Student Union (BSU), the largest student organization on campus, promotes both the inward and outward journeys of Christian growth. BSU enables the college community to experience the Christian faith by involving themselves in weekly worship services, Bible studies, community mission projects, ministry teams, retreats, and mission trips. The BSU is open to persons of all denominations. Other religious activities are sponsored by Catholic Campus Ministry, Fellowship of Christian Athletes and area churches. Participation in any campus ministry activity is voluntary and open to all students.

Social and Cultural Life

Averett strives to enhance the overall educational experience of students through development of, exposure to, and participation in social and cultural activities. Numerous events are planned throughout the school year for the personal enjoyment and growth of our students. Besides the on-campus events, discounted or free tickets are available to students for many community-sponsored events.

Averett University Campus Activities Board

The Averett University Campus Activities Board (CAB) offers an opportunity for increased group participation and interaction while presenting socially stimulating programs to the campus community. Instilling a sense of participation and responsibility as a member of the community or as a leader in the CAB is a constant focus. The CAB's strength is a direct result of the input and assistance from a large number of student volunteers. Several committees oversee different components of the CAB and sponsor comedians, concerts, dances, movies, and other special events throughout the year.

Averett Concert/Lecture Committee

The Concert/Lecture Committee, composed of faculty, staff and students, sponsors a series of events each year for both the student body and the community. The events organized by this committee include public speakers, musical performances and dramatic productions.

Averett Singers

Averett Singers is the primary choral performing organization on campus. This choir offers special opportunities for ensemble singing and individual musical expression. The main focus of the choir is to represent the University positively at both on and off campus events. Membership is open to any student who successfully completes an audition, and academic credit may be awarded for each semester of participation.

Averett Ringers

The Averett Ringers offers a unique instrumental ensemble opportunity for students who wish to ring handbells. This group performs several times during the year. Membership is open to a limited number of students who complete an interview with the director, and academic credit may be awarded for each semester of participation.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Student Life](#)
[> **Athletics and Leisure Activities**](#)
[> Student Organizations](#)
[> Student Services](#)

STUDENT LIFE

Athletics and Leisure Activities

Intercollegiate Athletics

In addition to the instructional program listed in this catalog, Averett provides a co-curricular program of intercollegiate athletics for interested students. Committed to providing an environment for the growth and development of the whole person, the University recognizes that athletic endeavors and academic pursuits should complement each other. Thus, it is the goal of the University that the student-athlete experience success in academics as well as in athletics. Averett is dedicated to the ideals of both fair play and amateur athletic competition as defined and guided by the National Collegiate Athletic Association.

Averett holds institutional membership in the National Collegiate Athletic Association (Division III) and the USA SouthAthletic Conference. These memberships make possible exciting, competitive experiences and advancement to regional and national competition for qualifying individuals and teams.

Although student-athletes are recruited by the coaches, open tryouts are held for all sports. Opportunities are available for participation in the sports listed below.

Women

Basketball
Cross Country
Lacrosse
Soccer
Softball
Tennis
Volleyball

Men

Baseball
Basketball
Cross Country
Golf
Football
Soccer
Tennis

The **Averett University Cheerleading Squad** competes with other cheerleading squads in the colleges that belong to the Dixie Intercollegiate Athletic Conference. The Cheerleading Squad is under the supervision of the Athletic Department.

The **Equestrian Drill Team** gives men and women riders the opportunity to participate at the regional and national level of competition through the Intercollegiate Horse Show Association. The Equestrian Drill Team is under the supervision of the Equestrian Department.

Intramural and Recreational Activities

Intramural activities are available to students in such sports as basketball, billiards, ping pong, softball football, soccer, and volleyball. In addition, other activities such as aerobics, dance lesson, canoe and ski trips are offered. For more information contact the Office of Student Activities.

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)

[> Student Life](#)
[> Athletics and Leisure Activities](#)

[> Student Organizations](#)
[> Student Services](#)

STUDENT LIFE

Student Organizations

Student Government Association

The Student Government Association (SGA), composed of all Averett students, is organized to give each student a sense of personal responsibility and an opportunity to participate through student body meetings, elections, and various college committees and activities. This organization permits the students at Averett to practice a considerable degree of self-governance through their elected representatives, and due to Averett's size, each student is able to make a difference.

All students are members of the Association, thus automatically accepting and upholding the Honor Code and rules of the University, and are subject to its jurisdiction. Rules are established through the cooperative effort of students, faculty, and administrative officers and are administered by the Averett Judicial System.

Students may participate in the Executive Board or the Student Senate under the Constitution and bylaws of the Student Government Association.

Clubs and Organizations

- Alpha Chi
- Alpha Eta Rho
- Alpha Kappa Delta
- American Chemical Society
- AU Dancers (Alpha Unity)
- AU Paintball
- Averett University Art Club
- Averett Criminal Justice Association/Lambda Alpha Epsilon
- Averett Gospel Choir
- Averett Players
- Averett Science Association
- Averett University College Republicans
- Averett University Gospel Choir
- Averett University Honors Association
- Averett University Radio Associates
- Averett University Roller Hockey
- Baptist Student Union
- Campus Activities Board
- Catholic Campus Ministries
- Chanticleer News Magazine
- Commuter Life Association
- Cougar Cats
- Dan River Region Rotaract
- The Ember (literary magazine)
- Fellowship of Christian Athletes
- Habitat for Humanity
- IMPACT
- Mu Phi Epsilon
- Multicultural Student Association
- Pendulum Yearbook
- Phi Sigma Sigma Sorority
- Pi Kappa Phi Fraternity
- Psychology Association
- Student Government Association
- Writer's Folio

Student Publications

All interested students, especially those enrolled in the Journalism program, are encouraged to work on the University's student publications--the Ember, the literary and art magazine; The Chanticleer, the newspaper; and the Pendulum, the yearbook.

As the university newspaper of Averett, The Chanticleer holds membership in the Virginia Intercollegiate Press and serves as a laboratory for students enrolled in journalism classes.

Alumni Association

The purpose of this Association shall be to strengthen, nourish, and perpetuate the relations among Averett University alumni and between the University and its graduates. Further, the Association will cultivate interaction with current students, promote support of the University and strive to advance the mission of the institution. Any student who has attended the University for one year and who is in good standing with Averett is a member of the Association.

The Alumni Executive Board composed of alumni members from across the decades governs the Association. This distinguished Alumni leadership provides perspective that elevates the best of Averett's history while, at the same time, charts new directions that further strengthen the impact of an Averett University degree. Persons interested in serving on the Board should contact the Alumni Office located in Alumni Hall at 1-800-AVERETT (283-7388), ext. 7252 or email at admit@averett.edu.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Student Life](#)
[> Athletics and Leisure](#)
[Activities](#)
[> Student Organizations](#)
[> **Student Services**](#)

STUDENT LIFE

Student Services

Academic Support Services

The Office of Academic Support Services is responsible for the administration of programs and services designed to identify and assist students who are experiencing problems affecting their academic performance and their progress towards graduation. Services offered include peer tutoring, the Academic Success (study skills) Program and individual assistance with academic issues. This office is also in responsible for disability services, student withdrawals and the Learning Center.

Career Services

Career Services offers students the opportunity to explore their values, skills, and individual backgrounds in such a way as to make career development the result of informed decision making. As such, students are encouraged to utilize the office and its services beginning their freshman year and continuing throughout the academic experience. Individual and group career counseling, career literature, Self-Directed Search (an academic major and career choices inventory), graduate school information, and job search assistance for part-time, full-time, and summer employment are available to students and alumni.

Counseling Center

Personal counseling is available to assist students who need support and guidance in personal matters.

Occasionally, all persons encounter situations which make them uncomfortable. In times like these, it is often helpful to supplement usual decision-making by discussing a personal problem with a trained counselor. Personal counseling at Averett is conducted in a confidential and non-judgmental manner.

The Director of Counseling is prepared to aid students faced with a variety of concerns including (but not limited to) adjustment problems, family issues, sexual identity concerns, eating disorders, relationship problems, loneliness, alcohol and drug concerns, study skills, and lack of self-confidence. If necessary, referrals may be made to a psychiatrist in the community for further assistance.

The Director of Counseling also sponsors activities designed to educate students on matters such as healthy relationships, drug and alcohol issues, and how to strengthen such personal skills as assertiveness and communication.

Disability Services

Services to students with disabilities are coordinated through the Office of Academic Support Services in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973. Students receiving ADA accommodations are required to provide documentation of their disabilities and recommended accommodations to the Director of Academic Support Services.

Food Services

Food service is provided in the University Dining Hall during regular academic sessions. Nutritional meals are served buffet style. Meals may be purchased by commuter students, faculty and staff. The Dining Hall is closed during all student vacations.

Health Services

Averett has partnered with an off-campus medical facility in Danville to provide health care services for all Averett students. All students must present their Averett ID as well as their medical insurance card and co-payment at the time of service. Transportation will be provided if necessary for students who have health care needs. Meningitis and flu shot

clinics will be held on-campus during the academic year. For additional information regarding health services contact the Secretary to the Dean of Students (791-5620). In the event of an emergency, students should contact 911 immediately, then Security (5888) or a member of the Residence Life staff. The university requires every student to have completed a personal health history form on file in the Office of Student Development.

Learning Center

The Learning Center provides tutoring assistance to students enrolled in introductory courses (100-200 levels). In addition to assistance in those courses, students receive help in refining their writing and mathematics skills, as well as time management and other study skills.

Peer tutors are upperclassmen who have who have been selected and trained to provide academic assistance to students. Tutors work with students on a one-on-one basis and in small group situations, as the need dictates.

This program is free to all Averett students and is coordinated by the Director of Academic Support Services.

New Student Orientation

Averett's START is a seven-day program designed to introduce new students to the college experience and to help them make a successful transition. During this time each student takes one course that helps develop study, library, writing and speaking skills necessary for the pursuit of college-level programs. Enrollment for each seminar is limited to 15 students to encourage faculty-student interaction and active participation in such activities as class discussions, group projects, and other course requirements. The seminars cover a variety of topics and academic areas, and are designed to appeal to a wide range of interests.

In addition to the seminars, students will participate in a wide variety of programs and activities designed to increase their confidence and ability to participate in and benefit from their total college experience. Examples of these programs and activities include speakers, presentations, workshops, recreational activities and community service projects.

North Campus Fitness Center

The Fitness Center, located in the Grant Center on North Campus, has a variety of strength training and aerobic equipment. Included are both plate-loaded and pin-operated weight machines as well as free weights and medicine balls. There are also stationary bikes, treadmills, and a stair stepper for aerobic conditioning. The Center is open daily for students, staff, and faculty use. The Chair of the Physical Education Department supervises the center and is available by appointment to counsel with students regarding their fitness programs. Hours for the Fitness Center will be established and posted at the beginning of each semester.

Currently enrolled students can also use the facilities of the Danville YMCA free-of-charge. This includes the fitness equipment, weight room, gym, and the swimming pool. Students are required to show their Averett ID upon entering. Some restriction on hours of use may be imposed.

Residence Life

Residence life at Averett is an important part of the total educational experience of the student. A description of the residence halls and the requirements for living on campus are detailed in the following sections.

Residence Halls

Averett University is committed to the belief that students have much to learn from each other and that the experience of residential living fosters both group responsibility and self-determination. All four classes are represented in most units so that living/learning may be enhanced by diversity. Most of the residence halls are set up to accommodate two students per room, encouraging the personal growth that comes from having a roommate. A limited number of single rooms are available in the traditional halls for students willing to pay the single room fee of \$200.00 per semester.

The following four residence halls are all located in interconnecting buildings on the central

part of the campus:

Main Hall is the oldest residence hall housing approximately 24 women on the third floor and 15 men on the second floor. All rooms are singles with no additional single room fee. The rooms have high ceilings, and most rooms have sinks. Each floor has a centrally located bathroom and a lounge. Laundry facilities are located in the basement.

Davenport Hall houses approximately 32 men and 65 women on three floors. Each floor has a lounge, and all rooms have hardwood floors, large windows, and a light, airy atmosphere. Davenport is centrally located within this complex of buildings.

Danville Hall is an L-shaped building, housing 55 men on two floors. Both floors are designated quiet areas. The rooms have high ceilings and no two rooms are alike in size and shape. There is a TV lounge and a large, centrally located bathroom on each floor.

Bishop Hall, the newest building in this complex, houses 45 males on one floor. A TV lounge and a large bathroom are located on the floor. This building has central air conditioning.

Fugate Hall is located across Woodland Avenue. Accommodating 70 men and 80 women in fifteen suites of rooms, each suite contains five rooms with a shared central living area and bathroom. The building is air conditioned, and all student rooms are carpeted.

Averett Commons Apartments are the newest student housing option on the Averett Campus, accommodating 140 students in 35 apartments. Each apartment houses four students in single rooms and contains a furnished central living area, a full-service kitchen, a washer/dryer, and two bathrooms. This new complex is intended for upperclass students and contains accessible apartments on the first floor.

To be considered for housing, resident students must complete housing information forms and sign a residence hall contract. After receiving the \$250.00 reservation deposit, the Director of Residence Life will make housing assignments for the academic year.

Students must be enrolled in at least 12 hours of course work during a regular semester in order to live in the residence halls without special permission. Housing is also available in the residence halls during each of the summer sessions, although students are not required to live on campus in the summer.

The Assistant Director of Residence Life, a member of the professional staff, lives on campus to provide supervision and guidance in the residence halls. Selected upperclassmen serve as Resident Assistants who carry out residential programs and help solve problems that arise. The Averett University Student Handbook contains the official residence hall guidelines with policies and procedures for students residing in the residence halls. All students visiting in the halls are expected to abide by university policy.

The residence halls are closed following the end of each semester/summer session. They are also closed for Thanksgiving and spring holidays. The Dining Hall is closed during all student vacations.

Requirements for Living in Residence Halls

Full-time Averett University students are required to live in university residence halls unless they fall into one of the following categories:

1. students who reside with their parents or a close relative within the city of Danville or within commuting distance;
2. students who have previously established residence in the city or the immediate area while attending Danville Community College, Patrick Henry Community College, Southside Virginia Community College, Piedmont Community College, or Rockingham Community College;
3. students who have established residence in the city of Danville or the immediate area one year prior to enrolling at Averett University;
4. students who have attained at least 90 semester hours of credit;
5. students who are married and/or have a minor child;
6. students 23 years of age or older;
7. students who have served 180 consecutive days of active duty in the military.

(Reserve and National Guard members would not be eligible.)

8. international students (those admitted on an I-20 form and whose I-94 entrance/exit visa is stamped F-1)

Commuter Life

Averett University is committed to the concept of diversity in its student body and recognizes and appreciates the contributions the commuter student makes to the University. In an attempt to involve the commuter students in on-campus activities and to foster a sense of community among all student groups, the Student Development staff plans a variety of activities that appeal to all students. Commuter students are encouraged to attend those functions, to join clubs and organizations, and to participate in musical programs, dramatic productions, and intercollegiate athletics. The Commuter Life Organization addresses the needs and concerns of the commuter students. All commuter students are encouraged to join this organization and to become involved in its activities. For more information contact the Office of Student Development.

Banking and Bookstore

An ATM machine is located on campus (outside of the Dining Hall) and there are several banks within 5 or 10 minutes of the university.

Textbooks and classroom supplies, as well as drinks & snacks, school spirit clothing and gifts, cards, and residence hall supplies (toothpaste, deodorant, etc.) may be purchased from the Averett Bookstore. All Averett students with a current student ID/access card are able to charge books and school supplies to their Tuition Account for the first three weeks of fall and/or spring semesters. These charges are added to the student's account at the end of that period and can be paid through the Cashier's Office. Bookstore Gift Cards are available.

Motor Vehicles

All Motor Vehicles must be registered with the Office of Campus Security. Once a student has registered a vehicle, they are given a parking permit, which must be displayed on the vehicle's rearview mirror. Parking areas that have been hard -surfaced have spaces marked off. Parking is prohibited on the lawns and in places where the spaces have not been marked off. There are specific areas on campus for Resident Students and Commuter Students to park as well as areas designated for Faculty, Staff and Visitor parking. The University exercises the right to fine the driver of any vehicle who does not follow campus-parking regulations. Vehicles that are improperly parked in Faculty Only, Visitor Only and Library 2 Hour parking spaces are subject to be towed, at owner's expense. Vehicles can also be towed for repeated parking violations, circumstances where emergency lanes or service entrances are blocked, or when vehicles are not registered with the University. Averett students are not allowed to park in areas designated as **Parking By Permit Only**; these parking areas are on the street and are for City Residents who live in the homes surrounding the University.

Introducing Averett

Admissions

Academic Programs

Degree Programs

Student Life

**Financial
Information**

Directory of Personnel

University Calendar

Catalog Index

> **Tuition and Fees**
> Financial Policy

> Financial Assistance
> Scholarships and Loans

FINANCIAL INFORMATION Expenses - Tuition and Fees



This page contains information about [Schedule of Costs for 2004-2005](#), [Room and Board](#), [Supplemental Fees](#), and [Special Program Fees](#).

A college education represents a substantial monetary investment by the student and/or parents. Yet the tuition and fees charged by Averett University cover only a part of the full cost of instruction and services. Substantial contributions to the university by alumni, trustees, friends, businesses and industries, and other sources help to subsidize the education of every student at Averett.

Schedule of Costs for 2004-2005

All tuition and fees are subject to change, without notice, by the Averett University Board of Trustees.

The charges listed below apply only to the undergraduate program offered on the main campus during regular semesters. Costs for summer sessions, the graduate programs, IDEAL, GPS, and at off-campus sites are listed in other publications appropriate to the program.

Tuition:

Full-time	\$8,715.00 per semester
Part-time (1-9 hours of credit)	\$295.00 per hour
Part-time (10 or 11 hours of credit)	\$350.00 per hour
IDEAL Full time (all independent studies)	\$295.00 per hour
IDEAL Full time (classroom and independent studies)	\$8,715.00 per semester
IDEAL Part time (1-11 hours)	\$295.00 per hour
Graduate Education	\$175.00 per hour
Audit Fee	One-half of regular hourly rate
Senior Citizen Audit (age 65 or over)	\$25.00 per course

NOTE: All Virginia residents who are full-time students are eligible for tuition assistance grants from the Commonwealth of Virginia; see the [Virginia Tuition Assistance Program](#).

Room and Board

Residence Halls	\$2,020.00 per semester
Board for Residence Halls	820.00 per semester (Full Meal Plan)
Averett Commons Apartments	\$2,345.00 per semester
Board for Commons residents	
Option 1: 5 Meal Plan	425.00 per semester
Option 2: 10 Meal Plan	780.00 per semester
Option 3: 19 Meal Plan	820.00 per semester

Supplemental Fees

Application Fee (international students only) This non-refundable processing fee must accompany the application for admission.	\$35.00
General Fee (per semester) This fee is assessed to all students enrolling for 9 or more hours.	\$500.00
Advance Room Deposit (Resident students)	\$400.00
Advance Tuition Deposit (Commuting students)	\$100.00
Advance Deposit for International Students (Resident or Commuter)	\$4,000.00
	(\$6,000 beginning Spring 2005)
Residence Hall Key Deposit	\$30.00
Commencement Fee (Graduating seniors only)	\$100.00
Cap and Gown (Graduating seniors only)	Check with Bookstore
Placement Fee	\$25.00
Optional fee for registration with Career Services.	

Special Program Fees

These fees are assessed because of the extraordinary costs involved in the programs.

Equestrian Studies

Fees are assessed per class and are listed in the course schedule each semester. Fees range from \$50 to \$800 per course.

Stall Board (per month)	\$325.00
-------------------------	----------

Aviation

Pilot Training (Flight and Ground): special, per course fees are assessed and are published individually. Fees are available from the Business Office, Financial Aid Office, Flight Operations facility, and Aviation Department Chair. If the student requires extra time (particularly flight time) for the completion of a course, additional fees will be assessed. Rates are subject to change because of the unpredictability of fuel and related costs.

Music

Students taking instruction in piano, organ or voice will be assessed applied music fees which are in addition to tuition.

Special Course and Laboratory Fees

Some courses require the provision of special supplies and/or facilities, e.g., laboratory sciences, studio art and photography. The costs of these resources fluctuate; thus the charges are published each semester in the schedule of class offerings. Be assured that every attempt is made to keep these fees as low as possible.

Library Fines

Students must pay fines for the late return of library books and are liable for damage to or loss of books.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Tuition and Fees](#)
[> **Financial Policy**](#)
[> Financial Assistance](#)
[> Scholarships and Loans](#)

FINANCIAL INFORMATION

Financial Policy

Payment Schedules

Tuition and fees and all other university costs are due and payable at or before the beginning of each academic session. To assist families who may need some payment plan the University makes available extended payment plans through

Academic Management Services AMS
 One AMS Place
 P. O. Box 100
 Swansea, MA 02777
 (800) 635-0120
www.tuitionpay.com

Information about this plan, which provides for payment in monthly installments, is sent upon acceptance for admission.

All accounts, including library and parking fines, bookstore charges and damage assessments, must be paid prior to registration for a subsequent term. Graduation and issuance of diplomas, transcripts, or course grades will be denied if accounts are not paid in full. A late payment penalty of 5 percent will be added to each bill if not paid by the end of the published drop/add period in each term, and a subsequent one and one-half percent (1 1/2%) interest charge will be added at the end of each month. Interest is calculated on the average balance in the account for the month. Should a student leave Averett University with an account due, all attorney's fees and other reasonable collection costs and charges necessary for collection will also be assessed.

Crediting of Financial Aid: Financial aid from any source administered by Averett University is credited to the student's account with one-half being awarded each semester. The student, or family, is responsible for the difference between actual charges and the semester amount of financial aid. The outstanding balance is due by validation.

Refunds

Registration in the University is considered a contract binding the student and/or his/her parents for charges for the entire semester. The university makes a number of financial commitments based on enrollment at the conclusion of registration. Many of these commitments do not change even if students subsequently withdraw. However, in order to accommodate those exceptional situations which require withdrawal, the university will allow refunds to students who follow the official procedures for withdrawing from the university. Scholarships and other financial aid will be prorated in accordance with appropriate regulations and a separate refund schedule.

Any claims for refunds will be based on the date of last day in class.

Withdrawal procedures: Any student who withdraws from the university, regardless of the reason, must see the Dean of Student Development and complete the withdrawal process. Failure to officially withdraw will result in academic penalties. Upon withdrawal from the university the student's identification card must be surrendered to the Dean of Student Development.

Tuition - Refunds are computed on total charges for tuition and fees. The last day in class will be used in calculating all refunds.

<u>If Student Withdraws</u>	Regular Semesters	<u>Percentage of Refund</u>
-----------------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------------

On the first day of classes	100%
Weeks 1 and 2 (days 2 through 8)*	90%
Weeks 3 and 4 (days 9 through 19)*	50%
Weeks 4, 6, 7, and 8 (days 20 through 39)*	25%
Weeks 9 through the end of semester*	0%

*The definition of a week for federal purposes is if a class begins during that week it is considered week one. A seven day period is not a week for federal purposes.

If changes are made and the student still is taking at least 12 hours, there will be no adjustment in the full-time tuition rate.

<u>If Student Withdraws</u>	Summer Terms	<u>Percentage of Refund</u>
First day of classes		90%
Remainder of first week		80%
Second week		50%
Third and Fourth weeks		0%

A statutory pro rata refund will be applied to any student who:

- is attending the school for the first time, **AND**
- leaves the school on or before the 60 percent point in the enrollment period for which he or she has been charged.

A student is attending for the first time if he or she:

- has not previously attended at least one class at the school, **or**
- received a refund of 100 percent of any charges for tuition and fees for previous attendance at the school.

A student remains a "first-time" student until he or she:

- withdraws, drops out, takes a leave of absence, or is suspended after attending one class, **OR**
- completes the enrollment period (semester) in which he or she enrolled. The second semester of attendance is not considered a "first-time" student.

Room and Board

There is no refund of room charges for the semester, but prorated board charges will be refunded.

Fees

Normally there is no refund of fees. An exception is made for fees assessed in the aviation program.

Ground School: same schedule as tuition.

Flight Courses: Fees are prorated based on time incurred; however, there is a penalty of 10 percent of the unused fee assessed for those who withdraw after the last day to add a class.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Tuition and Fees](#)
[> Financial Policy](#)
[> **Financial Assistance**](#)
[> Scholarships and Loans](#)

FINANCIAL INFORMATION

Financial Assistance

Averett has an extensive program of financial assistance which serves to recognize academic achievement as well as the special financial needs of individual students. Each application for financial assistance is carefully reviewed and a package of aid is developed which will typically include a variety of types and sources of aid.

Federal regulations forbid federal financial aid to be given to any student who fails to maintain satisfactory progress. The definition of satisfactory progress involves both grade point average and the number of semester hours earned. A copy of the full policy regarding satisfactory progress may be obtained from the financial aid office.

Procedure for Applying for Financial Aid

Application for financial assistance must be filed each year. Therefore, upperclassmen who wish to apply for financial assistance should proceed as follows before April 1:

- Complete the Renewal Free Application for Federal Student Aid sent to you by the Federal processor if you applied the previous year.
- If you did not apply the previous year, complete the Free Application for Federal Student Aid. The form is in the Financial Aid Office or you can apply electronically at www.fafsa.ed.gov.
- Financial aid applicants who are residents of the state of Virginia must also apply for the Virginia Tuition Assistance Grant.

Financial Aid Appeals

Financial aid appeals can be made in writing to the Scholarship Committee, Averett Financial Aid Office. The decision of the Scholarship Committee is final.

[Introducing Averett](#)
[Admissions](#)
[Academic Programs](#)
[Degree Programs](#)
[Student Life](#)
[Financial Information](#)
[Directory of Personnel](#)
[University Calendar](#)
[Catalog Index](#)
[> Tuition and Fees](#)
[> Financial Policy](#)
[> Financial Assistance](#)
[> **Scholarships and Loans**](#)

FINANCIAL INFORMATION

Scholarships and Loans

Note: Unless otherwise indicated, application for any of the following scholarships or loans should be made through the office of Financial Aid.

University Sponsored

Averett Trustees Scholarships are awarded to outstanding full-time entering freshmen each year. Trustees Scholarships are full tuition scholarships (less TAG award).

Notification of scholarship awards will begin in February and will continue throughout the spring, with preference given to early applicants. Awards are renewable in subsequent years if the recipient has a cumulative grade point average of 3.00. Recipients are not eligible to receive any other university-sponsored or Baptist church-related awards other than the Virginia Baptist Pastor's Scholarship. Virginia residents are expected to apply for the Virginia Tuition Assistance Grant which is applied to the cost of tuition.

Averett Merit Awards are awarded to outstanding full-time entering freshmen and transfers. Notification of awards will begin in the fall and continue throughout the spring. Awards are renewable in subsequent years if the recipients maintain required grade point average. Averett scholarships are renewable with minimum cumulative grade point average of 2.50.

Averett Assistance Grants are awarded to needy students as appropriate to supplement the financial aid package. The amounts for these awards vary.

Phi Theta Kappa scholarships in the amount of \$500 are awarded to community college students who are members of Phi Theta Kappa. These scholarships may be renewed with cumulative grade point average of 3.00 or above.

Piedmont Commuter Grants are available to commuter students from the counties of Pittsylvania, Henry and Halifax in Virginia, and Caswell and Rockingham counties in North Carolina. You must be a first-time full-time student attending Averett to receive this \$2,800 grant.

Ministerial Tuition Discounts of \$400 are awarded to full-time resident students (\$200 for non-resident students) preparing for church-related vocations. The same discount is awarded annually to students who are daughters or sons of ministers. These awards may be renewed each year upon application. If the student changes vocational plans and does not pursue church-related work, these awards will be considered loans, repayable to Averett University. These scholarships may be renewed with a cumulative grade point average of 2.00 or above.

Family Discount of \$250 is awarded to each resident student if there are two or more Averett students in the same family. Full-time, non-resident students are awarded \$100 for each student if there are two or more Averett students in the same family. The awards may be renewed each year.

Federally Sponsored

Students who file the Free Application for Federal Student Aid forms are automatically considered for Pell Grant, Perkins Loan, Supplemental Educational Opportunity Grant (SEOG) and College Work Study. Students must be enrolled at least half-time to be eligible.

Federal Supplemental Educational Opportunity Grants are available to students with financial need. These grants are from \$100 to \$4000 annually.

Federal Pell Grants provide for grants up to \$4050. The amount of the Pell award is determined by the financial circumstances of the student's family.

Federal Perkins Loans may be secured for amounts up to \$4000 annually for students who demonstrate exceptional financial need. A student is obligated to repay the loan with a low interest rate within a ten-year period after graduation.

Federal College Work-Study Program provides part-time work, up to twenty hours weekly, for those attending college as regular students. During the summer or other vacation periods, a student may, if funds are available, work full-time under this program. Students enrolled at least half-time are eligible to apply.

Educational Aids for Dependents of Military Personnel. Scholarships, grants, and loans are available from the military services for dependents of active-duty, retired, or deceased military personnel. Obtain further information from:

Army:

The Adjutant General
Department of the Army
Washington, D.C. 20315
Attention AGMG-D

Air Force:

Director of Air Force Aid Society
National Headquarters
Washington, D.C. 20333

Navy and Marine Corps:

Chief of Naval Personnel
Arlington Annex
Washington, D.C. 20370

Coast Guard:

Commandant, U.S. Coast Guard, Headquarters,
Washington, D.C. 20591

Veterans Administration Benefits are available to eligible individuals as Averett University has been approved to offer educational programs to persons entitled to educational benefits. Information about VA benefits at Averett University is available from the Registrar's Office.

State Sponsored

The Virginia Tuition Assistance Program. Students who are legal residents of the Commonwealth of Virginia may apply for this program. Awards of \$2210 in 2004-2005 are available to all legal residents who apply by the deadline and who take a minimum of 12 semester hours each semester. The application must be completed and returned to the Financial Aid Office at Averett by July 31.

The Virginia College Scholarship Assistance Program. Students who are legal residents of the Commonwealth of Virginia and who are at least half-time each semester may be considered for the College Scholarship Assistance Program which is need-based.

Baptist Church Related

Virginia Baptist Pastors Scholarships of \$500 per year are available to students who are recommended by pastors of churches affiliated with the Baptist General Association of Virginia.

Other Scholarships

For returning students, applications may be made to the Financial Aid Office.

The Margarette M. Aldredge Scholarship was established and endowed by James H. Aldredge, Jr. in memory of his sister and Averett alumna, Margarette M. Aldredge. The scholarship recipient must maintain at least a 2.5 grade point average, demonstrate financial need, show a strong desire to complete an undergraduate degree, and be a good citizen.

The Alumni Association Endowed Scholarship was established by Averett University alumni and is to be awarded to full-time undergraduate student(s).

The American National Bank and Trust Company Scholarship was established by the bank to provide scholarship funds for students who demonstrate financial need.

The Joseph B. Anderson Student Aid Fund provides scholarships to students who demonstrate financial need. Preference is given to those students from Danville, Pittsylvania County or surrounding area.

The Paschal Lawrence Anderson and Ellen Hawkins Anderson Scholarship was endowed by P. L. Anderson, Jr. in memory of his parents. The recipient(s) should demonstrate financial need, maintain at least a 2.5 grade point average, and demonstrate traits of good citizenship. First consideration is to be given to qualified students related to Paschal Lawrence and Ellen Hawkins Anderson.

The Randy Monteith Anderson Fund was established in memory of Mrs. Anderson, who attended Averett, by her husband and friends. Preference is given students from West Virginia.

The Averett Student Foundation, a student organization of Averett University comprised of 30 selected juniors and seniors, raises money during each academic session to recognize an entering freshman who has demonstrated qualities of leadership while in high school.

The Ella Vaden Aylor Scholarship was established and endowed by Carrie Tate Aylor and Louise Aylor Montague, both Averett alumnae, in memory of their mother, Ella Vaden Aylor, Averett Class of 1900. This scholarship is awarded to one or more Christian students majoring in music. Preference will be given to a student(s) from Virginia and/or North Carolina. The recipient must demonstrate financial need and skill.

The Bruce James Barbour Family Scholarship was endowed by the Barbour family. Preference is given to an applicant who has been active in a church and who demonstrates financial need. The recipient must maintain a grade point average of 2.00 or better.

The Barksdale Endowed Study Abroad Fund was established and endowed by Mary Morten Barksdale to provide funds for an Averett student to study in a foreign country. The recipient is to be enrolled as a full time student at Averett with 60 or more academic credits and shall have a cumulative grade point average of 2.50. The study abroad shall be a program for academic credit sponsored directly by Averett or a program of study through which academic credit will be granted by Averett University. Apply to the Office of the Dean of Arts and Sciences.

The Brantley Barr Scholarship Fund was endowed by Averett alumna Mary Lou Martin Barr in memory of her husband, Brantley F. Barr. This scholarship is awarded to students who have passed the traditional age for college attendance. Preference will be given first to students from the city of Danville, second from the county of Pittsylvania, third from the adjacent cities and counties.

The Walter E. Barrick Jr. Endowed Scholarship was established by William E. Barrick and is awarded to full-time undergraduate aviation/aeronautics students.

The David Strouse Blount Education Foundation scholarships are given to residents of Roanoke and surrounding counties who demonstrate financial need. The following minimum grade point averages are required every semester: Freshman, 1.00; Sophomore, 1.50; Junior and Senior 2.00.

The Thomas and Isabelle Boyd Scholarship was established and endowed by the estate of Mrs. Lightfoot Boyd Fourqurean, Averett University Class of 1931. Preference will be given to a student graduating from a high school in Halifax County, Virginia, who has demonstrated financial need.

The Russell C. Brachman Scholarship was endowed by Dr. Brachman's family and friends in his memory. Dr. Brachman served as professor of biology at Averett from 1958

until his retirement in 1991. The scholarship is awarded annually to an outstanding biology major.

The Bradley Family Scholarship was established and endowed by Averett alumnus, H. Hawkins Bradley '48. This scholarship will be awarded to traditional or nontraditional students majoring in Business Administration who have maintained a grade point average of 2.50 or above and have demonstrated traits of good citizenship.

The Elizabeth and James Bustard Distinguished Award was established at Averett under the provisions of a trust created by the will of Elizabeth B. Bustard. This award is to be made at commencement to one or more graduating seniors selected by the faculty and Board of Trustees, who excel in high ideals of living, in spiritual qualities and in generous service to others, for use in graduate study. Contact the Office of the Dean of Arts and Sciences for information about this scholarship.

The Patty Saunders Cahill Memorial Scholarship is given to deserving traditional or non-traditional full time undergraduate students with demonstrated financial need. The recipient must maintain a 2.5 GPA and demonstrate traits of good citizenship.

The Mrs. Janet H. Campbell Scholarship was given and endowed in her honor by her husband, Dr. Frank R. Campbell. The scholarship will be awarded to a deserving student each year from either the Roanoke Valley area or Statesville, North Carolina, area.

The Alexander Berkeley Carrington, Jr. Scholarship was established and endowed in Mr. Carrington's memory. The recipient(s) shall demonstrate financial need.

The Galilee Clark Scholarship was established by alumna, E. Galilee Clark, '37, and is awarded to a full-time undergraduate student.

The Class of 1941 Scholarship was established and endowed by the members of the Averett University Class of 1941. This scholarship is to be awarded to a student who demonstrates financial need, maintains a grade point average of 3.00 or better, and who is in good standing both academically and socially.

The Class of 1948 Scholarship was established and endowed by the members of the Averett University Class of 1948. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a student who demonstrates financial need and who is in good academic standing.

The Class of 1950 Alumni Scholarship was established and endowed by the members of the Averett University Class of 1950. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a student who demonstrates financial need and who is in good academic standing.

The Class of 1954 Endowed Scholarship was established by members of the Averett University Class of the 1954. This scholarship is to be awarded to full-time undergraduate student(s).

The Class of 1955 Endowed Scholarship was established by members of the Averett University Class of the 1955. This scholarship is to be awarded to full-time undergraduate student(s).

The P. F. Conway Scholarship is given to deserving, full-time undergraduate students.

The Dimon Incorporated Endowed Scholarship was established by DIMON Incorporated. Preference is given to students who are dependents of full-time employees of DIMON Inc. Second preference is given to students who are dependents of other local tobacco industry employees. Third preference is given to students who have lived for at least one year in Danville, Pittsylvania County or the surrounding area. In instances where multiple candidates meet the eligibility requirements, determination shall be made based on a combination of the student's financial need and past academic achievement. Recipients must be full-time students and maintain good academic and social standing.

The Ruth Walton English Scholarship was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Ruth Walton English. The recipient shall maintain at least a 2.50 grade point average, demonstrate good citizenship and have financial need. The scholarship may be retained for four years of undergraduate study provided the recipient continues to meet

the criteria.

The George and Betty Falk – Walker – Morris Endowed Scholarship was established and endowed by Dr. and Mrs. George Falk, in celebration of the lives of Mrs. Falk's parents, Durwood and Katherine M. Walker, and her grandparents, Dr. Clifford and Mary B. Morris and Jacob and Annis A. Walker. Preference will be given to a person in need who exhibits strong character and fine virtues.

The Mary C. Fugate Scholarship, established and endowed by Averett University alumnae in memory of former Averett Dean, Mary C. Fugate, is awarded each year to a young woman who best demonstrates those ideals exemplary of the life of Mary C. Fugate. The recipient shall be selected by the Scholarship Committee from nominations submitted by the Averett faculty.

The Inez C. Gaddy Endowed Scholarship was established by Dr. Clifford G. Gaddy, longtime Averett Trustee, in honor of his love and devotion to his wife, Inez C. Gaddy. Preference shall be given to students graduating from a high school in the City of Danville or Pittsylvania County, Virginia, or from Caswell County, North Carolina. Preference shall be given to students with demonstrated financial need.

The Grace W. Garrett and Harry B. Waller Memorial Scholarship Fund was established through the Harry B. Waller Estate. The scholarship is awarded to full-time undergraduate students demonstrating financial need.

The Roy G. and Joan F. Gignac Endowed Scholarship was established and endowed by Mr. and Mrs. Roy G. Gignac. Preference will be given to a student graduating from a high school in Pittsylvania County, Virginia, Danville, Virginia, or Caswell County, North Carolina, who demonstrates financial need. Preference will be given to a student who attends Sacred Heart Catholic Church of Danville, Virginia.

The Emily Swain Grousbeck Scholarship, established and endowed by Mrs. Grousbeck, is awarded to students who demonstrate financial need and who are in good academic and social standing with the University.

The John O. and Annie Newman Gunn Scholarship was endowed through the generosity of John O. and Annie Newman Gunn of Yanceyville, North Carolina, in memory of William Hundley and Alice Gunn Jefferson and their sons, Richard Garland Jefferson and William Hundley Jefferson, Jr., and in recognition of their daughters, Elizabeth Wilson Jefferson and Mary Evelyn Jefferson. While the scholarship is not restricted, the donors wish to encourage students for full-time Christian service and give preference to students from Caswell County, North Carolina.

The Haley-Wood Endowed Scholarship was established by Averett alumna, Josephine E. Wood, '41, in memory of her maternal grandmother, Mrs. Grace Mae Haley. The scholarship is awarded to a female undergraduate student who is a resident of Virginia. The recipient shall have demonstrated academic achievement. A 3.0 GPA is required in any academic program the recipient was enrolled in prior to Averett University.

The J. Bryant Heard Scholarship was endowed by Major Olga S. Heard, '33, U.S. Army (Retired) in memory of her father. The scholarship is awarded to a Virginia resident with first preference given to a student from Danville or Lynchburg majoring in mathematics.

The Mrs. Bryant Heard Scholarship was established by her daughter and Averett alumna, Major Olga S. Heard, USA (Ret.) and endowed through the generosity of the Heard family. This scholarship is awarded to a Virginia resident with first preference given to a student from Danville or Lynchburg majoring in English or Voice.

The Richard and Louise Hinton Scholarship was endowed by Averett alumna Anna Lee Hinton Fetter in memory of her parents Richard and Louise Hinton. Preference is given to students from the Northern Neck of Virginia or from the state of Virginia who demonstrate financial need.

The Moonja Hong Endowed Scholarship Fund was created and endowed by Dr. Inja Hong, former Averett faculty member, in memory of her loving sister, Moonja Hong. The award is given to a deserving sophomore demonstrating financial need, with first priority

given to students without living parents, or to students of a single parent. The scholarship is renewable as long as the student maintains a 3.0 grade point average.

The Hopkins-Bryan Scholarship of Averett is funded annually through the Ira and Bertha Hopkins and Nancy Hopkins Bryan Trust Fund managed and held in perpetuity by the Virginia Baptist Foundation, Inc. The recipient is to be a Virginia Baptist student who was a member of a Virginia Baptist church of the Baptist General Association of Virginia prior to enrolling at Averett.

The Douglas W. Hosier '83 Memorial Scholarship was established and endowed by his parents, members of his family, classmates and friends, in memory of Douglas Hosier, Averett University Class of 1983. The recipient will be a full-time student who has demonstrated financial need and good citizenship. Preference will be given to a qualified student who is related to any deceased Averett University alumni, or to any international student who meets the criteria.

The Hudson Scholarship was endowed by Lester and Jane Hudson and is awarded to a junior or senior. The recipient must maintain a 3.00 grade point average.

The Bonnie Williams Humphreys Scholarship was established through a bequest from the Estate of Bonnie W. Humphreys, friend of the University. Funds are awarded to deserving, full-time undergraduate students who are residents of the City of Danville or Pittsylvania County.

Jones Family Scholarship was established through the estate of Dr. Charles E. Jones. This scholarship shall be awarded to a student pursuing an education in the area of religious studies.

The Lovick H. Kernodle Scholarship was established by the Lovick H. Kernodle Foundation for a graduate of George Washington High School, Danville, Virginia, who has demonstrated outstanding scholarship and good citizenship and who has financial need.

The Law Firm of Daniel, Vaughan, Medley and Smitherman, P.C. Scholarship was established and endowed by the members of the firm of Daniel, Vaughan, Medley and Smitherman. Preference shall be given to traditional or non-traditional students who have demonstrated financial need. The recipient shall have maintained a grade point average of 2.50 or higher and shall have demonstrated traits of good citizenship.

The Howard and Margaret Lee Scholarship was established by Averett faculty and staff to honor the contributions of Dr. and Mrs. Howard Lee to Averett University. The applicant must demonstrate financial need.

The Robert J. and Irene W. Mann Scholarship Fund honors the long-standing and sacrificial efforts of Reverend and Mrs. Mann. Preference is given to students from Patrick and Albemarle Counties and the city of Charlottesville, Virginia.

Marshall Concrete Products Scholarship Fund is for employees of Marshall Concrete Products or their dependents or grandchildren.

The MBA Scholarship was established through the Estate of Ruth Irene Baker '45 and contributions from members of Averett University MBA Cluster 146. The award is available to a deserving MBA student in each of the four regions (Southside, Greater Washington, Tidewater, and Central Richmond). Recipients are required to have a 3.5 GPA whether already enrolled in the MBA program or just entering after undergraduate study. Recipients cannot be receiving other financial aid which includes employee tuition reimbursement. Previous recipients may reapply but are not guaranteed a second award.

Carroll and Ruth McDowell Scholarship was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Louise Hall McDowell '57 and her husband Charles, in memory of his parents. Preference will be given to a traditional or nontraditional student from a rural section of Halifax County, Virginia, pursuing a degree in religious studies or in education. The scholarship is for four years providing that the student remains in good academic and social standing.

The Onnie H. and Bertie Milloway Scholarship Fund was established in their memory

to assist freshmen of Averett University. The recipients are selected by the Trust Investment Committee of the American National Bank of Danville, Virginia.

The Spencer and Mary Elizabeth Morten Scholarship was established and endowed by Mary Elizabeth Bassett Morten. Preference is given to students who are employees, spouses or children/grandchildren of employees of Bassett Mirror Company and/or Bassett Furniture Industries, Inc. Second preference is given to students who have lived for at least one year in the geographic area of Northern Henry County and Eastern Patrick County, Virginia. Applicants must have at least a 2.50 grade point average and demonstrate traits of good citizenship.

The Tony and Reva Myers Scholarship was endowed by Averett alumnus, Dr. Danny C. Myers, '72, in honor of his parents. This scholarship is awarded to a student from Pittsylvania County, Virginia, majoring in mathematics or science. Preference shall be given to a student from a home where only one natural parent resides and from whom no financial support is available. The recipient must maintain a 3.20 grade point average.

The Neil Andrew Nesterak Scholarship was established and endowed by his parents, members of his family, Averett University classmates and friends, in memory of Neil Andrew Nesterak, Averett Class of 1983. This scholarship is to be awarded to a student who demonstrates an interest and enjoyment working with young people in both sports and out of door activities. The recipient must maintain a grade point average of 2.50 or above and have demonstrated financial need.

The Mildred Fulton Owen Scholarship was endowed by her son, Claude S. Owen, Jr., and daughter-in-law, Lamar Lewis Owen ('65). This scholarship is awarded to one or more female residents of Pittsylvania County who are full-time students at Averett.

The Peoples Mutual Telephone Company Scholarship was established and endowed by the Board of Directors of Peoples Mutual Telephone Company of Gretna, Virginia. Preference is given to students who are employees, spouses or children/grandchildren of employees of Peoples Mutual Telephone Company. Second Preference is given to students who have lived for at least one year in the geographic area served by the Peoples Mutual Telephone Company. The recipient must maintain at least a 2.50 grade point average and demonstrate traits of good citizenship.

The Pittsylvania Baptist Association Scholarship was established and endowed by members of Baptist Churches of the Pittsylvania Baptist Association of the Baptist General Association of Virginia. The Averett Scholarship Committee in consultation with the faculty of the Averett Religion Department shall determine the recipient of the scholarship. All students who are eligible for these funds are to be notified. The recipient must be participating in an internship under the guidance of the Religion Department, demonstrate financial need, and must be in good standing with the college academically and socially.

The Alfred Hugo Radke and Gerda Else Radke Scholarship was established and endowed by Averett Alumnus, Dr. Danny Myers, '72, and his wife Ingrid, in honor of Mrs. Myers' parents, Alfred and Gerda Radke. As Mr. and Mrs. Radke immigrated to the United States from Germany in 1950, this scholarship is to be awarded to an international student or a first generation American student whose intent is to graduate from Averett University and demonstrates financial need.

The David S. Reynolds Theatre Arts Scholarship was established and endowed by his father and his sister, Claude D. Reynolds and Claudette Reynolds Keeter. This scholarship will be awarded annually to a student majoring in theatre. Awards will be given on the basis of a student audition, academic performance (a minimum 3.00 grade point average) and financial need.

The Rippe Art Scholarship was established and endowed by A. Benjamin Rippe in memory of Karen Rippe Steinreich, Sonia Lubin Rippe, E. Louis Rippe and David H. Gladstone for students in the visual arts or music. The selection of the recipient shall be made by the faculty of the Art Department in conjunction with the Scholarship Committee.

The O. Lewis Roach Jr. Scholarship was established and endowed by Alyce Amory Roach in memory of her husband, Averett University trustee *emeritus*, O. Lewis Roach, Jr. The recipient must major in business administration. A 3.00 GPA or its equivalent is

demanded in any academic program that the recipient completed or was enrolled in prior to Averett University. Preference will be given to a resident of Virginia.

The Othelia and William Shelhorse Scholarship was established through the estate of William Shelhorse, former Averett Trustee, and includes contributions from Othelia Shelhorse Anderson. The scholarship is awarded to students from the Danville/Pittsylvania County area. Awards are based on a combination of individual merit and financial need.

The Florrie Storey Shultz Business Department Scholarship was established and endowed by her nephew Robert H. Shultz, Jr., and the estate of Florrie Storey Shultz, Averett University Class of 1928. The recipient may be a traditional or non-traditional student, majoring in the field of business, who demonstrates financial need, and must have at least a 3.00 GPA and demonstrate traits of good citizenship. This award is available to incoming freshmen provided they have met the GPA requirements during their senior year of high school.

The Elizabeth R. Smith/Tom Wilson Theatre Arts Scholarship was established by Averett's graduates of the Theatre Arts Department to honor the efforts of both professors in promoting the arts and crafts of the stage. The recipient shall have maintained an overall grade point average of 2.00 and a 3.00 in their major area of study. The selection of the recipient(s) shall be made by a Theatre Arts Scholarship Committee in conjunction with the University's Scholarship Committee.

The Louise Goodwin Snavelly Scholarship was established and endowed by Louise Goodwin Snavelly, Averett Class of 1941, in memory of her parents, Nicie B. and John S. Snavelly. Preference shall be given to traditional or non-traditional students who have demonstrated need and who reside in the area of Virginia to include, beginning on the east, Giles, Montgomery, Floyd and Carroll Counties and to include all other counties west of these to the western end of the Commonwealth of Virginia. Within this area, preference shall be given to females from Smyth, Washington and Wythe Counties in the order as listed. The recipient shall have maintained at least a grade point average of 2.50 or above and shall demonstrate traits of good citizenship.

The Bessie Myers Suddarth Scholarship was established and endowed by the members of the Myers family in memory of Averett alumna, Bessie Myers Suddarth. Criteria for selection are available in the Office of Financial Aid.

The Wycliffe Swain Scholarship was established and endowed by his sister, Emily Swain Grousbeck. This scholarship is awarded to one or more students majoring in music who demonstrate financial need.

The Bernard C. and Barbara S. Swann Scholarship, endowed by Bernard and Barbara Swann, is awarded to students who are recommended by their home church and meet the following criteria (in order of preference): A Christian student preparing for a church-related vocation; a Virginia Baptist student; a Christian student in good standing with Averett University.

The Dewey W. Swicegood Scholarship was established in a bequest of Dewey W. Swicegood and endowed by Mrs. Dewey W. Swicegood in memory of her husband. Preference is given to a student from Danville or Pittsylvania County who demonstrates financial need.

The Homer "T" Thomasson Scholarship was established by the Homer "T" Thomasson Fund Directors from contributions received from friends and colleagues in memory of Homer "T" Thomasson. The recipient must be preparing for a career in the field of communications.

The Virginia Bank and Trust Company Scholarship is available to a full-time, senior student who lives within 30 miles of the bank's main office in Danville. Applicants must be majors in either Business Administration: Management Science or Business Administration: Marketing, have a grade point average of at least 2.75, demonstrate financial need, and have a record of good citizenship.

The Dr. Bernice Heard Waddell Scholarship was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Major Olga S. Heard, USA (Ret.), in memory of her sister, Dr. Bernice Heard

Waddell who served as a professor and as acting President of Stratford College. For twelve years she served as professor of foreign languages at Averett. This scholarship is awarded to an upperclassman who has demonstrated interest and ability in the study of French and/or Spanish and who desires to pursue the study of French and/or Spanish beyond the intermediate level.

The Nancy Frazer Wakeman, '31, Scholarship was established and endowed by her husband, Truman J. Wakeman. The recipient must have a 2.50 or better grade point average and demonstrate traits of good citizenship. The applicant must need financial assistance.

The Lettie Pate Whitehead Foundation provides scholarships for female residents of Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Tennessee, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana who are studying medical technology, nursing, special education, or wellness/sports medicine. The student must demonstrate financial need.

The Dot R. Williamson Scholarship was established in memory of Averett alumna Dot Richmond Williamson by her family. This scholarship will be awarded to a student majoring in music.

The Lawrence G. "Lefty" Wilson Memorial Scholarship was established and endowed by family and friends, in memory of Lawrence G. "Lefty" Wilson. Preference will be given to a graduate of George Washington High School in Danville, VA. If a student is not available from GWHS, preference will be given to a student from Southside VA. The recipient will have demonstrated traits of good citizenship and sportsmanship.

The Louise Rowlett Wingo Scholarship is an endowed scholarship for students preparing to teach mathematics which was established by Mrs. Sara Gregory and Mrs. Gene Moore in memory of their aunt, Louise Rowlett Wingo. The recipient must demonstrate financial need and must teach one year for each year he receives the scholarship.

The Anne Worthington Scholarship, endowed by Dr. Worthington ('74), is awarded to one or more non-traditional junior or senior students majoring in the humanities or in science. A grade point average of 3.00 or better and demonstrated financial need are required.

The Garland and Harriet Wyatt Scholarship was endowed by Averett alumni Garland and Harriet B. Wyatt for a student(s) majoring in business.

Annual Scholarships

Adopt-A-Scholar Program provides scholarships ranging from \$500-\$5000 per year to Averett students, based upon financial need, scholastic record, and general leadership qualities. These scholarships are provided by donors who wish to provide the current financial assistance needed by individual students.

The CIT Group/Factoring Scholarship is an annual award for a full-time student from the Danville area who demonstrates financial need, academic promise and whose school and/or community involvement indicate leadership potential. The recipient must possess a 3.0 or better GPA. The recipient shall be selected by the College Scholarship Committee.

William A. Ellis III Annual Scholarship provided by the family and friends of William A. Ellis, III, a member of the Averett University class of 1993, in honor of his commitment to the aviation and aeronautics program. Awarded to a deserving student with first preference given to those majoring in aeronautics.

Regina Schneck Joseph Annual Scholarship provided by Mr. Franklin Joseph and awarded to students who have been in foster care with the Danville Department of Social Services for six months or more presently or in the past. Recipients shall be full-time students in a program leading to a degree. Special consideration is given to students currently in foster care at the time of the application process.

Evelyn Miller Memorial Scholarship provided by current and retired Averett University faculty and staff, family, and friends of Evelyn Miller. Funds are awarded to students majoring in Liberal Studies with PK-6 Teacher Licensure, Music, or any major leading toward Secondary Teacher Licensure with a minimum GPA of 3.0. Recipients shall be

chosen based on contributions to the major, overall character, fine virtues and good social standing. This award is need and/or merit-based.

The Titmus Foundation Scholarship is a \$5000 award given annually to a student majoring in mathematics and/or the sciences who plans a career in teaching.

Other scholarships include:

- **The Agnes H. Athey Scholarship**
- **The Palte Pallitz Auerbach Scholarship**
- **The Averett Players Scholarship**
- **Class of 1960 Scholarship**
- **Class of 1968 Scholarship**
- **Class of 1976 Scholarship**
- **Class of 1985 Scholarship**
- **Francis S. Crews Scholarship**
- **The Charles Harris Scholarship**
- **The Olga Sheppard Heard Endowed Scholarship**
- **Flora Baker Hicks, T.E.L. Memorial Scholarship**
- **The Lizzie Lowndes Scholarship**
- **The Louise Paulsen Scholarship Fund**
- **The Katherine Payne Rigney '42 Endowed Scholarship**
- **The George and Leah Shields Endowed Scholarship**
- **The Vinson Family Fund Scholarship**

[Scholarships and awards for honor students](#)

Educational Loans

The Charles B. Keesee Educational Fund provides low interest educational loans up to \$5300 for students from Virginia and North Carolina who attend Averett and demonstrate financial need. These loans are interest free and do not have to be repaid while the recipient is at least half-time status at Averett. Applications for The Keesee Fund Loans may be received by writing to: The Charles B. Keesee Educational Fund, Inc., P.O. Box 431, Martinsville, VA 24112. The deadline for applying for Keesee Fund Loans is **April 1**. Keesee Fund Loans are forgiven for students who enter church-related vocations.

Federal Stafford Student Loans (formerly Guaranteed Student Loans) are made available to any college student by private lending agencies or public agencies, depending on the state. Students should apply to their hometown bank. The federal government will pay the interest while they are attending Averett. Repayment of the principal and the interest begins when the student has ceased his course of study. A student must establish eligibility or ineligibility for the Pell Grant by completing the Free Application for Federal Student Aid before the guaranteed student loan can be processed.

Other Loans

Parents Loan to Undergraduate Students (PLUS). This loan is made to the parents of undergraduate students. The loan provides additional funds for educational expenses and is made by a lender such as a bank, credit union, or savings and loan association.

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)[> Board of Trustees](#)[> Faculty](#)[> Administrative Offices](#)[> Alumni Association](#)[> Information Directory](#)**DIRECTORY OF PERSONNEL****Board of Trustees****Trustee Emeritus**

Mrs. Brantley F. Barr

Danville, Virginia

Officers

Joseph H. Vipperman

Chairperson

Dr. Ben J. Davenport, Jr.

First Vice-Chairperson

Dr. Claude B. Owen, Jr.

Second Vice-Chairperson

Landon R. Wyatt, Jr.

Secretary

Term to Expire in 2005

The Honorable Rossie D. Alston, Jr.

Manassas, Virginia

Judge Circuit Court

Charles S. Barbour, Retired President

West Point, Virginia

The Bank of West Point

Richard G. Barkhouser, President

Danville, Virginia

Barkhouser Motors, Inc

Donald W. Colbert, Vice President

Richmond, Virginia

S & K Famous Brands, Inc.

Dr. Clifford G. Gaddy, Retired Physician

Danville, Virginia

Internal Medicine Associates

Landon R. Wyatt, Jr., President

Danville, Virginia

Wyatt Buick Pontiac Company

Term to Expire in 2006

Dr. Martti Ahtisaari

Helsinki, Finland

Former President of Finland

John S. Barr, Attorney

Richmond, Virginia

McGuireWoods, LLP

The Honorable Whittington W. Clement

Richmond, Virginia

Secretary of Transportation

Commonwealth of Virginia

Niles P. Daly, President

Danville, Virginia

Daly Seven, Inc.

Jacob E. Frith II

Martinsville, Virginia

Chairman and Chief Executive Officer

Frith Construction Company

Louise Watkins Moore, Retired Teacher

Halifax, Virginia

James J. Roberts, President

Kenbridge, Virginia

Kenbridge Construction Company

The Reverend Dr. Daniel E. Scott

Roanoke, Virginia

Case Manager

Older Americans/Area Agency on Aging

Henry I. Slayton, Jr., Retired Executive

Danville, Virginia

Bank of Virginia

Term to Expire in 2007

Robert B. Bass, Retired Executive

Richmond, Virginia

Bass Crane Service, Inc.

Edward M. Bishop

Glen Allen, Virginia

Retired Telecommunications Specialist

Virginia State Corporation Commission

George B. Daniel, Attorney/President

Yanceyville, North Carolina

George B. Daniel, P.A.

Dr. Ben J. Davenport, Jr., Chairman

Chatham, Virginia

First Piedmont Corporation

Dr. Claude B. Owen, Jr.

Danville, Virginia

Retired Chief Executive Officer

DIMON, Inc. .

Joseph H. Vipperman
 Retired Executive Vice President
 American Electric Power
 Ebb H. Williams, III, Attorney
 Ebb H. Williams, III, P.C.
 Dr. Garland M. Wyatt, Retired President
 J. W. Wyatt & Co., Inc.

Moneta, Virginia

Martinsville, Virginia

Danville, Virginia

Term to Expire in 2008

Dr. Jim Baucom, Jr., Pastor,
 Columbia Baptist Church
 Mrs. Ruby L. Dillard, Retired Principal
 Amelia County Elementary School
 Dr. Franklin W. Maddux
 Physician/President, Danville Urologic Clinic,
 President, Gamewood Data Systems, Inc.
 Lewis A. Martin III, Senior Partner
 Martin & Raynor, P.C.
 Francis E. McGovern, Professor of Law
 Duke University
 Jackson Reasor
 President and Chief Executive Officer
 Old Dominion Electric Cooperative
 John D. Vigouroux
 President and Chief Operating Officer
 Tumbleweed Communications

Falls Church, Virginia

Amelia, Virginia

Danville, Virginia

Charlottesville, Virginia

Durham, North Carolina

Richmond, Virginia

Los Altos Hills, California

Board of Associates

The Board of Associates is an advisory group of outstanding business, professional, and community leaders that works with the administration and Board of Trustees to promote present and future programs of the College.

Mr. Charles Abercrombie	Danville, Virginia
Mrs. Nancy Blaylock	Williamsburg, Virginia
Mrs. Martha Jordan Chukinas	Danville, Virginia
Mrs. Barbara Shields Collie, '50	Keeling, Virginia
Dr. Fred B. Cornett	Danville, Virginia
Mr. Donald J. Cox	Danville, Virginia
Mr. Nathaniel Crews	Danville, Virginia
Mrs. Dan Daniel	Danville, Virginia
Mr. Randy Davis	Danville, Virginia
Mr. Fred L. Evans, Jr	Danville, Virginia
Mrs. B. Lynne Ingram Finney '84	Danville, Virginia
Mr. Claude Gourley	Blairs, Virginia
Mrs. Delores Gourley	Blairs, Virginia
Mrs. Virginia Hall	Danville, Virginia
Mrs. Dorothy O. Harris	Danville, Virginia
Mrs. Bonnie Neff Hoover, '46	Broadway, Virginia
Mr. Wayne Hutchins	Chapel Hill, North Carolina
Mr. Tim Kernodle	Danville, Virginia
Mr. Donald Merricks, '74 & '91	Danville, Virginia
Dr. H. Marvin Midkiff	Martinsville, Virginia
Dr. N. Andrew Overstreet	Danville, Virginia
Mrs. Patricia Plowden	Danville, Virginia
Mr. Claude Reynolds	Callands, Virginia
Mr. Mike Rieley	Lynchburg, Virginia
Mrs. Alyce A. Roach	Danville, Virginia
Mrs. Ruth R. Sager	Danville, Virginia

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)[> Board of Trustees](#)[> Faculty](#)[> Administrative Offices](#)[> Alumni Association](#)[> Information Directory](#)**DIRECTORY OF PERSONNEL****Faculty (Arts and Sciences)****S. Gail Allen, B.M.Ed., M.M., Ed.D.**

Professor

B.M.Ed., M.M., Ed.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Music

Stephen C. Ausband, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Professor

B.A., Guilford College; M.A., Ph.D., Tulane University.

English

Lee Bash, B.F.A., M.F.A., Ph. D.

Dean of Graduate and Professional Studies

B.F.A., M.F.A., Ph.D., State University of New York at Buffalo.

Paul Battaglia, B.S., M.S., D.B.A.

Assistant Professor

Business Administration

B.S., Canisius College; M.S., Butler University; D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University.

Richard S. Breen, B.A., M.F.A.

Associate Professor

Theatre

B.A., Averett College; M.F.A., Western Illinois University.

S. Lee Burton, B.S., M.S.

Assistant Professor

Physical Education, Wellness & Sport Science

B.S., Appalachian State University; M.S., Old Dominion University.

James S. Caldwell, B.S., Ph.D.

Associate Professor

Biology

B.S., University of Texas at Austin; Ph.D., Wake Forest University, Bowman Gray School of Medicine; Post-doctoral Study: Harvard Medical School.

Robert M. Carlsen III, B.S., M.A., Ph.D.

Assistant Professor

Psychology

B.S., Averett College; M.A., East Carolina University; Ph.D., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University.

Steven V. Cates, B.S., M.B.A., D.B.A.

Assistant Professor

Business Administration

B.S., University of North Carolina, M.B.A., Northern Illinois University, D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University.

Do Ren Chang, B.S., M.S., Ph.D.

Elizabeth Walker Professor of Chemistry

B.S., M.S., National Taiwan University; Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill.

Barbara A. Clark, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Associate Professor

Spanish

B.A., College of St. Elizabeth; M.A., State University of New York at Binghamton; Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill.

Rebecca L. Clark, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Professor

Sociology

B.A., Stratford College; M.A., Ph.D., Arizona State University.

J. Randolph Cromwell, B.S., M.Z.Y., Ph.D.

Associate Professor Education
 B.S., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; M.Z.Y. and Ph.D.,
 Auburn University.

Elaine L. Day, B.A., M.S.

Director of Library Associate Professor
 B.A., Syracuse University; M.S.L.S., University of North Carolina.

Paulette Dubofsky, B.A., B.B.A., M.S., Ph.D.

Associate Professor Business Administration
 B.A. and B.B.A., University of Washington; M.S. and Ph. D., Texas A&M
 University.

Donald Travis Ethington, B.S., M.S., Ph.D.

Professor Mathematics
 B.A., Centre College of Kentucky; M.S., Mississippi State University; Ph.D.,
 University of Georgia.

Jeffrey A. Fager, B.A., M.Th., Ph.D.

Dean of Arts and Sciences
 B.A., University of Evansville; M.Th., Southern Methodist University; Ph.D.,
 Vanderbilt University.

Jane Faulkner, A.A., A.A.S., B.A., M.S.

Assistant Professor Equestrian Studies
 A.A., B.A., Colorado Women's College; A.A.S., Ohio State University; M.S.,
 North Carolina State University.

Richard M. Ferguson, Jr., B.S., M.Ed., Ph.D.

Associate Professor Physical Education, Wellness & Sport Science
 B.S., James Madison University; M.Ed., Ph.D., University of Virginia.

Annie K. Ferrell, B.A., M.Ed., Ed.D.

Assistant Professor Education
 B.A., Virginia State University; M.Ed., Averett University; Ed.D., Nova
 Southeastern University.

James O. Filler, B.A.

Instructor Equestrian Studies
 B.A., New England College.

Jackie W. Finney, B.A., M.F.A.

Associate Professor Theatre
 B.A., Averett College; M.F.A., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Edward W. Fisher, B.S., M.S., Ph.D.

Professor Biology
 B.S., M.S., Memphis State University; Ph.D., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and
 State University.

J. Thomson Foster, B.S.Ed., M.Ed., Ph.D.

Professor Physical Education, Wellness & Sport Science
 B.S.Ed., M.Ed., Mississippi College; Ph.D., University of Southern Mississippi.

Clara G. Fountain, B.A., M.S.L.S.

Humanities Librarian, Archivist Associate Professor
 B.A., M.S.L.S., University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill.

Ann D. Garbett, A.B., M.A., Ph.A., Ph.D.

Professor English
 A.B., Franklin College; M.A., Ph.A., Ph.D., University of Arkansas.

Jeffrey S. Grover, B.S., M.B.A., D.B.A.

Assistant Professor Business Administration
 B.S., Mobile College; M.B.A., Embry-Riddle Aeronautical University; D.B.A.,
 Nova Southeastern University.

John M. Guarino, B.S., A.M., M.B.A., Ph.D.

Associate Professor Business Administration

B.S., State College at Bridgewater; A.M., Dartmouth College; M.B.A., University of Connecticut; Ph.D., Syracuse University.

Ruth B. Haffner, B.A.

Library Acquisitions Coordinator

Instructor

B.A., Asbury College.

Roy D. Hammesfahr, B.B.A., M.S., Ph.D.

Associate Professor

Business Administration

B.B.A., Marshall University; M.S., Air Force Institute of Technology; Ph. D., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University

Michael G. Hammonds, B.A., M.A.

Associate Professor

English and Journalism

B.A., M.A., University of Oklahoma.

Kevin M. Harden, A.A., B.A., M.L.S.

Social Sciences/

Assistant Professor

Electronic Resources Librarian

A.A., Louisburg College; B.A., Elon College; M.L.S., North Carolina Central University.

Laura L. Hartman, A.A., B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Associate Professor

Sociology/Criminal Justice

A.A., Cuyahoga County Community College; B.A., Arizona State University; M. A., Ph.D., University of Texas at Austin.

Anna D. Hatten, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Professor

Psychology

B.A., Mercer University; M.A., Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Jean L. Hatten, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Professor

Psychology

B.A., Mercer University; M.A., Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

R. Franklin Hawkins, B.S., M.C., D.B.A.

Assistant Professor

Business Administration

B.S., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; M.C., University of Richmond; D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University.

Jack I. Hayes, Jr., B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

W. C. (Dan) Daniel Professor of History and Political Science

B.A., Hampden-Sydney College; M.A., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; Ph.D., University of South Carolina.

Betty B. Heard, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Professor

English

B.A., Southern Methodist University; M.A., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

David E. Hoffman, A.B., M.A., Ed.D.

Professor

English and Journalism

B.A., M.A., Marshall University; Ed.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Tonja M. Hudson, B.S., M.A.

Assistant Professor

Mathematics

B.S., Averett University; M.A., Wake Forest University.

Michael Jernigan, B.A., M.I.S., Ph.D.

Assistant Professor

Business Administration

B.A., Old Dominion University; M.I.S., Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University

Vincent P. Kania, B.S., M.B.A., C.P.A.

Associate Professor

Business Administration

B.S., M.B.A., West Virginia University; C.P.A., Virginia and West Virginia.

Diane P. Kendrick, B.S., M.Ed., M.F.A.

Professor

Art

B.S., East Carolina University; M.Ed., M.F.A., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Barbara A. Kushubar, B.S., M.S.S.

Associate Professor Physical Education, Wellness & Sport Science
B.S., Averett University; M.S.S., United States Sports Academy.

John C. H. Laughlin, B.A., M.Div., Ph.D.

Professor Religion
B.A., Wake Forest University; M.Div., Ph.D., Southern Baptist Theological Seminary.

Steven R. Lemery, B.A., M.S.

Associate Professor Mathematics and Computer Science
B.A., Southern Illinois University; M.S., University of Arizona.

Anne Lewis, B.M., M.M.

Assistant Professor Music
B.M., M.M., Baylor University.

Robert C. Marsh, B.S., M.F.A.

Professor Art
B.S., Florence State University; M.F.A., University of Mississippi.

Charles A. Martell, B.S., M.A.

Assistant Professor Aeronautics
B.S., Washington State University; M.A., Rider University.

Laura Meder, B.S., M.Sc.

Assistant Professor Biology
B.S., Averett University; M.Sc., University of London.

Geneviève J. Moëne, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Assistant Professor Foreign Languages
B.A., M.A., Ph.D., University of Virginia.

Timothy D. Montgomery, A.A., B.A., M.C.M., Ed.D.

Professor Music
A.A., Bluefield College; B.A., University of Richmond; M.C.M., Southern Baptist Theological Seminary; Ed.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Alice M. Obenchain-Leeson, B.B.A., M.B.A., D.B.A.

Assistant Professor Business Administration
B.B.A., Roanoke College; M.B.A., Averett College; D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University.

Susan E. Osborne, B.S., M.A.

Assistant Professor Mathematics
B.S., Averett College; M.A., Wake Forest University.

Walter L. Penn III, B.A., J.D.

Assistant Professor Aeronautics
B.A., Hampden-Sydney College; J.D., University of Virginia School of Law.

Pamela B. Riedel, B.S., M.Ed., Ed.S., Ed.D.

Professor Education
B.S., M.Ed., Averett College; Ed.S., Ed.D., The College of William and Mary.

Sue F. Rogers, A.A., B.A., M.S., Ed.D.

Professor Education
A.A., Stratford College; B.A., M.S., Madison College; Ed.D., The American University; Graduate Study, University of Virginia.

David I. Rosenberg, B.A., M.S., Ph.D.

Associate Professor Psychology
B.A., University of Virginia; M.S., Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University.

Wallace S. Saunders, B.A., B.B.A., M.B.A., D.B.A.

Assistant Professor Business Administration
B.A., Washington Bible College; B.B.A., Northwood University; M.B.A. Liberty University; D.B.A., University of Sarasota.

Penny A. Sornberger, A.A., B.A., M.F.A.

Assistant Professor

Theatre

A.A., Carl Sandburg College; B.A., M.F.A., Western Illinois University.

Douglas S. Spadaro, B.A., M.B.A., Ph.D.

Professor

Business Administration

B.A., Roanoke College; M.B.A., University of Michigan; Ph.D., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; School of Bank Management, University of Virginia.

Phillip R. Sturm, B.S., M.B.A., Ph.D.

Associate Professor

Business Administration

B.S., M.B.A., Murray State University; Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University.

Chin-Chyuan Tai, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Professor

Economics

B.A., M.A., National Taiwan University; M.A., Ph.D., University of Cincinnati.

John S. Termini, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Assistant Professor

Business Administration

B.A., University of Tulsa; M.A., Fairleigh Dickinson University; Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University.

William S. Trakas, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Professor

History

B.A., Furman University; M.A., Ph.D., University of Wisconsin at Madison; Graduate Study, University of Munich, New York University.

William L. Trimyer, A.A., B.A., M.A., M.Div., D.Min.

Associate Professor

Religion

A.A., Bluefield College; B.A., Georgetown College; M.A., Goddard College; M. Div., Southern Baptist Theological Seminary; D.Min., Union Theological Seminary.

Gary A. Tucker, B.S., M.A., Ph.D.

Associate Professor

Mathematics and Computer Science

B.S., Averett College; M.A., Ph.D., Duke University; Graduate Study, Nova Southeastern University.

Brian S. Turner, B.S., M.T.

Instructor

Business Administration

B.S., Averett College; M.T., Old Dominion University.

James M. Verdini, B.A., M.L.S., M.A.

Humanities/Access Services Librarian

Assistant Professor

B.M., Western Connecticut State University; M.L.S., Southern Connecticut State University; M.A., Yale University.

Thomas M. Vick, B.S., J.D.

Assistant Professor

Aeronautics

B.S., Bridgewater State College; J.D., Massachusetts School of Law.

Karl R. Wallhausser, B.A., M.A.

Instructor

English

B.A., Berea College; M.A., University of Kentucky.

Lawrence E. Wilburn, B.A., M.A., Ph.D., B.A.

Professor, Associate Dean of Arts and Sciences, Registrar

Foreign Languages

B.A., University of Richmond; M.A., Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill.; B.A., Averett University.

Lynn H. Wolf, B.S., M.S., Ed.D.

Assistant Professor

Education

B.S., University of North Carolina at Greensboro; M.S., Radford University; Ed. D., Nova Southeastern University.

Jeffrey S. Woo, B.A., M.B.A., D.B.A.

Assistant Professor Business Administration
B.A., Mary Washington College; M.B.A., Averett College; D.B.A., Nova
Southeastern University.

Douglas S. Woundy, B.A, M.S.A., Ph.D.

Professor Business Administration
B.A., University of Connecticut; M.S.A., Western Connecticut State University;
Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University.

Steven D. Wray, B.Ed., M.Ed., J.D., Ph.D.

Professor Sociology/Criminal Justice
B.Ed., M.Ed., Ph.D., University of Florida; J.D., Washington and Lee University;
Graduate Study, Harvard University; New York University, Post Graduate
School of Medicine; University of Louisville, Southern Police Institute.

Peggy C. Wright, B.S., M.S., D.B.A.

Professor, Business Administration
Vice President for Administration and
Finance
B.S., Averett College; M.S., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University;
D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University.

Darcy Wudel, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Professor Political Science
B.A., M.A., University of Alberta; Ph. D., University of Toronto.

Faculty Emeriti

Alfred A. Bolton, B.S., M.A., D.B.A.	1990-2004	Professor, Business Administration
Pauline Coll, A.B., M.A., L.H.D.	1946-1978	Associate Professor, French
M. Elizabeth Compton, B.S., M.Ed., Ph.D.	1968-1999	Professor, Education
Juanita G. Grant, B.S., B.S. in L.S., M. L.A.	1967-1995	Professor, Director of Library
Richard M. Inlow, B.S., M.A., D.Arts	1967-1995	Associate Professor, Mathematics
Mary Evelyn Jefferson, B.A., M.A., M. S.L.S.	1976-1987	Associate Professor, Reference Librarian
Margaret Lanham, A.B., A.M., Ph.D.	1943-1978	Professor, English
Charles Postelle, B.A., M.A.T., D.F.A.	1966-1983	Associate Professor, History and Political Science
Charlotte Read, B.S., M.S.	1955-1990	Associate Professor, Business Administration
Norma Roady, B.S., M.Ed.	1962-1991	Associate Professor, Physical Education

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

[> Board of Trustees](#)
[> Faculty](#)

[> Administrative Offices](#)
[> Alumni Association](#)
[> Information Directory](#)

DIRECTORY OF PERSONNEL

President's Office

Richard A. Pfau, A.B., M.A., Ph.D.
President

Karen W. Ward
Administrative Assistant to the President

Academics

Jeffrey A. Fager, B.A., M.Th., Ph.D.
Dean of Arts and Sciences

Lawrence E. Wilburn, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.
Associate Dean and Registrar

Faye S. Brandon, A.A.S., B.B.A.
Secretary to the Dean of Arts and Sciences

Elaine L. Day, B.A., M.S.L.S.
Director of Library; Associate Professor

Clara G. Fountain, B.A., M.S.L.S.
Archivist, Associate Professor

Tawanna Fountain, A.S.
GPS Regional Support Services

Marquita Graves, A.A.S.
Records Specialist

Ruth B. Haffner, B.A.
Library Acquisitions Coordinator, Instructor

Kevin M. Harden, A.A., B.A., M.L.S.
Social Sciences/Electronic Resources Librarian; Assistant Professor

Delores C. Jayne
Administrative Assistant to the Dean of Arts and Sciences

Brenda Lipscomb, A.S., B.B.A.
Coordinator of Collection Maintenance and Library Systems

Tiffany H. Mitchell
GPS Regional Support Services

Karen Nelson
Secretary to the Faculty

Kathryn G. Oakes
Equestrian Facilities Manager

Patsy W. Pickral, B.B.A.
Library Cataloging Coordinator

Janet Roberson, B.A., B.A., M.B.A.
Associate Registrar

Gloria Robertson
Secretary to the Faculty

Annette L. Soucy, A.A.S., B.A.
Research Associate

James M. Verdini, B.A., M.L.S., M.A.
Humanities/Access Services Librarian; Assistant Professor

Joan Vinson, B.S.
Graduation Coordinator and Traditional Students Support Services

Alicia S. Walls
Secretary to the Faculty

Brenda Wilcox, A.A.
Aviation Office Manager

Regna (Reggie) Worthington, B.A.
Secretary to the Department of Education

**Lecturers - Medical Technology Affiliation
Augusta Medical Center, School of Clinical Laboratory Science**

Bernadette Bekken, B.S., CLS (NCA), M.T., (A.S.C.P.), B.B.
B.S., Aquinas College

Wayne P. Jessee, B.S., M.D.
B.S., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University;
M.D., University of Virginia.

Administration and Finance

Peggy C. Wright, B.S., M.S., D.B.A.
Vice President for Administration & Finance

Pat Bowman
Manager, Database Systems

Amelia Brooks, A.A.S., B.B.A.
Webmaster/Applications Specialist, Information Technology

Sundi Canada-Moody, B.S.
Accountant/Perkins Collections Coordinator

Walter Caswell
Aramark Facilities Services, Director of Security

Donald D'Alfonzo, B.S.
Director of Information Technology

Faye Dix
Payroll Benefits Coordinator

C. Neil Dowdy, A.A.S.
Coordinator of Web Production

Steven Fuquay
System Administrator

Janice Griffith
Aramark Facilities Services, Secretary to the Director of Facilities Services

Christopher W. Hanks, B.S.
Coordinator of Internet Accounts

Nancy F. Harriett
Administrative Assistant to the Vice President for Administration & Finance

Kristal G. Harris, A.A.S., B.B.A., M.B.A.
Facility Marketing & Assistant to the Vice President for Administration & Finance

Rose Holley
Cashier/Coordinator of Supplies/Purchasing

Sheila Jefferson
Barnes and Noble, Bookstore Manager

Alonzo Jones
Aramark Facilities Services, Director of Housekeeping

Linda Luck
Mailroom Clerk

Marvin Mullis, A.A.S.
Manager, Telecommunications

Susan C. Newcomb, A.S.
Director of Student Accounts

Cathy Porter
Manager, Chartwells Food Services

Elizabeth Richardson, A.S.
General Ledger Accountant

Charles Rumbut
Aramark Facilities Services, Director of Facilities Services
Kim Sally

Kim Sally
Mailroom Supervisor

Lori Thurman, A.S., B.S., M.B.A.
Comptroller

Linda Whitney
Coordinator of Accounts Payable

Admissions

Kathleen L. Tune, B.A., M.S.
Dean of Admissions

Angela Bowers
Office Manager/Coordinator of Application Processing

Teresa Hester, A.A.S.
Campus Visit Coordinator

Brynn Hughes, B.S.
Admissions Counselor

Amy R. Lewis, B.S.
Data Entry Specialist

Dara Logan, B.S.
Admissions Counselor

Stephanie T. Mullins, B.A.
Associate Director of Admissions

Joel Nester, B.A.
Assistant Director of Admissions

Graham Schmidt, B.S.
Admissions Counselor

Kristin Shelton, B.A.
Admissions Counselor

Athletics

Charles Harris, B.S.
Athletic Director

Jimmy Allen, B.S.
Men's Basketball Coach

Kathy A. Boccock, B.S.
Women's Basketball Coach
Softball Coach

Mavis Brantley-Lloyd
Secretary to the Athletic Director

Kenneth Brinkley, B.A.
Director of Facilities, North Campus

Mike Dunlevy, B.S.
Football Coach

Tim Dunlevy
Director of Football Operations

Sam Ferguson, B.S.
Sports Information Director

C. Edward Fulton, B.S.
Baseball Coach

James A. Gourlay, B.A.
Men's Soccer Coach
Golf Coach

To Be Announced
Women's Soccer Coach
Lacrosse Coach

Jerry McCombs, B.S., M.B.A.
Assistant Football Coach

V. Daniel Miller, B.S., M.B.A.
Women's Volleyball Coach
Women's Tennis Coach

Kristie Owen, B.A.
Cheerleading Coach

David Pavord
Men's Cross Country Coach

Katri Pavord
Women's Cross Country Coach

J. D. Shaw, B.S., M.S.
Head Assistant Football Coach

Bobby Shields, B.A., M.S.
Men's Tennis Coach

Melissa Williams, B.S., M. Ed.
Head Athletic Trainer

Financial Aid

Carl Bradsher, A.A., B.S.
Dean of Financial Assistance

Nancy Clark
Financial Aid Counselor

Christine Davis
Assistant Director of Financial Aid/Student Loan Officer

Mary Ryland-Smith, B.S.
Financial Aid Counselor

Randall Thornton, B.A.
Financial Aid Assistant

Graduate and Professional Studies

Lee Bash, B.F.A., M.F.A., Ph.D.
Dean of Graduate and Professional Studies

To Be Announced
Secretary to the Dean of Graduate and Professional Studies

James Akers, B.S.
Enrollment Manager - Tidewater Region

Lynn Altizer
Enrollment Counselor – Greater Washington Region

Jane Armentrout, B.A.
Enrollment Coordinator – Greater Washington Region

Nancy P. Atkins, B.A., M.S.

Coordinator of Student Services - Central Virginia Region

To Be Announced

Campus Accounting Manager – Graduate and Professional Studies Program

To Be Announced

Enrollment Counselor – Central Virginia Region

Robin Bartlett

Enrollment Coordinator - Tidewater Region

Fred Bolton, B.A., M.P.A., Ph.D.

Associate Dean; Director of Military Programs

Amy Bracey, BS,

Enrollment Counselor, Southern Virginia Region

Robin Brumfield

Enrollment Coordinator - Southern Virginia Region

Deidre Campbell, B.A.

Accounting Supervisor – Graduate and Professional Studies Program

Kendall Carter, B.A., M.B.A.

Associate Dean

Janell Cowley, B.A.

Enrollment Counselor – Central Virginia Region

Gerry Daly, B.S.

Materials Manager

Jennifer Dunleavy

Coordinator of Student Services, Greater Washington Region

Neely McCully Elstrodt, B.S.

Coordinator of Faculty Services – Tidewater Region

June Ford, B.S.

Faculty Credentials Specialist

Betty Ann Gammon, A.A.S.

Accounting Assistant – Graduate and Professional Studies Program

Robin Hagler, A.A.S.

Accounting Coordinator – Graduate and Professional Studies Program

Pamela D. Harris, A.A.S., B.S.

Financial Aid Manager – Graduate and Professional Studies Program

Debbie Hearn

Assistant Coordinator of Faculty Services – Greater Washington Area

Maureen Hill, B.A.

Enrollment Counselor – Greater Washington Area

Debbie Hyler

Administrative Assistant for Student Services - Southern Virginia Region

Marty Jackson, B.B.A.

Financial Services Representative – Graduate and Professional Studies Program

To Be Announced

Assistant Dean/Director – Central Virginia Region

Kim Jordan, A.S.B.

Administrative Assistant for Student Services – Central Virginia Region

Audrey Koch

Administrative Assistant for Student Services

Melissa Maybury Lubin, B.A., M.B.A.

Contract Manager, Director of Marketing and Enrollment – Graduate and Professional Studies Program

Lee Ann Mahan, B.B.A.

Enrollment Counselor – Southern Virginia Region

Denise Mayer, B.S.

Enrollment Manager – Greater Washington Region

Valerie Murphy, B.A.

Enrollment Counselor – Tidewater Region

E. Carter Neal, A.A.S., B.B.A.

Assistant Coordinator of Faculty Services - Southern Virginia Region

Erma C. Neveu

Assistant Coordinator of Student Services – Greater Washington Region

Darrell Newton, A.S., B.B.A.

Enrollment Counselor – Tidewater Region

Brian Nuckols, B.S., M.B.A.

Enrollment Counselor – Central Virginia Region

Katherine Pappas-Smith, B.A.

Enrollment Manager - Southern Virginia Region

Karen Parker

Secretary to the IDEAL Program

Lisa Paternite, B.A., M.S.

Enrollment Counselor – Tidewater Region

To Be Announced

Assistant Dean/Director – Greater Washington Region

Rhonda Rigney, B.A., M.B.A.

Accounting Supervisor – Graduate and Professional Studies Program

Linda Roberts, B.A., M.B.A.

Enrollment Manager - Central Virginia Region

Marie Elana Roland, B.S.

Director of Corporate Relations – Tidewater Region

Susan D. Rowland, A.A.S., B.B.A., M.B.A.

Director, IDEAL program

To Be Announced

Coordinator of Student Services – Southern Virginia Region

Erin Ryan, B.S., M.B.A.

Enrollment Counselor – Greater Washington Region

Marietta Sanford, B.B.A., M.B.A.

Coordinator of Student Services - Southern Virginia Region

To Be Announced

Coordinator of Student Services - Tidewater Region

Rena Shanks, A.A.S., B.S.

Accounting Coordinator – Graduate and Professional Studies Program

Robert L. Sims, B.S., M.B.A.

Director of Retention and Faculty Recruiting

Robin Morris Stocks, B.B.A., M.B.A.

Enrollment Counselor – Central Virginia Region

Pam Taylor, B.B.A., M.B.A.

Coordinator of Faculty Services – Central Virginia Region

Rosalind Warfield-Brown, B.A., M.A.

Director of On-Line Writing Lab (OWL)

Liz Wells, B.S.

Director of Corporate Relations – Central Virginia Region

Nancy H. Zarse, B.A.

Assistant to the Dean of Graduate and Professional Studies

Institutional Advancement

Richard A. Pejeau, B.A., M. Ed.

Vice President for Institutional Advancement

Kenneth G. Bond

Art Director

Marion Breen, B.S., M.S.

Administrative Assistant

Diane Gosney, A.A.S., B.B.A.

Coordinator of Development Services

Donna R. Gourley, A.A.S.

Executive Assistant to the Vice President

Susan L. Huckstep, B.A., M.A.

Director of Public Relations

M. Renee Lambert, B.A.

Director of Annual Giving

Sherry R. McDowell, A.A.S.

Administrative Assistant to the Director of Alumni and Parent Relations

Kathryn Stokely Powell, B.A.

Director of Development

Garry L. Pritchett, B.S.

Director of Alumni and Parent Relations

Vicki Richmond, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Grants Officer and Assistant to the President for Multi-Cultural Affairs

To Be Announced

Special Events Coordinator/Public Relations Assistant

Student Development

Dr. Robert Perkins, B.A., M.S. Ed., Ph.D.

Dean of Student Development

Joan Kahwajy-Anderson, B.S., M.Ed., L.P.C.

Director of Counseling Services

Laura Parrish

Administrative Assistant for Residence Life

Victoria Richardson, B.A., M.Ed.

Assistant Director of Residence Life & Student Activities

Matthew Stimpson, B.A., M. Ed.

Director of Residence Life

Racheal Lee Stimpson, B.A., M.Ed.

Director of Student Activities & Greek Affairs

Mark Werbeach, B.A., M.S.

Director of Career Services

Cynthia Myers White

Assistant to the Dean of Student Development

Janeen Worzbyt, B.S., M.A.

Director of Academic Support Services

To Be Announced

Assistant Director of Residence Life

To Be Announced

Campus Minister

[Introducing Averett](#)[Admissions](#)[Academic Programs](#)[Degree Programs](#)[Student Life](#)[Financial Information](#)[Directory of Personnel](#)[University Calendar](#)[Catalog Index](#)[> Board of Trustees](#)[> Faculty](#)[> Administrative Offices](#)[> **Alumni Association**](#)[> Information Directory](#)**DIRECTORY OF PERSONNEL****Averett University Alumni Association**

Mary C. Franks '66 Chairperson	Danville, VA
Charles W. Wickham '85 Vice-Chairperson	Danville, VA
Elizabeth "Nonie" O. Swaim '55 Secretary	Pittsburgh, PA
Pamela C. Ash '76	Richmond, VA
Joseph B. Baker '81	Richmond, VA
Vickie S. Black '03	Lexington, VA
Jeannette A. Brown '49	Chatham, VA
Daniel Burns '90	Charlotte, NC
Douglas M. Butts, Jr. '86	Danville, VA
Timothy S. Carter '94	Reynoldsburg, OH
Daniel E. Carlton '90	Earlysville, VA
Emily S. Carlton '90	Earlysville, VA
Audrey M. Clark '03	Danville, VA
Paula K. Darling '96	McLean, VA
Mary Jo Davis '55	Danville, VA
Carol U. Digesare '68 & '71	Jacksonville, FL
Jane F. Dungan '81	Greer, SC
Gonzalee M. Ford '58	Delray Beach, FL
Carrie W. Gay '98 & '01	Richmond, VA
Kenneth M. Howard '91	Alexandria, VA
Brian K. Jackson '03	Hampton, VA
Lucie J. Johnson '47	Chapel Hill, NC
Pekka A. Kaartinen '82	Espoo, Finland
Stephanie Kent '87	Fincastle, VA
John D. LaPrade '84	Charlottesville, VA
Jeanne E. LaRocco '98	Midlothian, VA
Julie D. Lockridge '55	Vero Beach, FL
Melanie A. Lunsford '02	Harrisonburg, VA
Eric C. Miller '96	Centreville, VA
Reid Mueller '00	Fairfax, VA
James Michael Nealer '98	Williamsburg, VA
Susan E. Osborne '96	Ringgold, VA
Ronald L. Pegram '98	Lynchburg, VA
Nancy S. Perry '72	Portsmouth, VA
B. Teresa Petty '93 & '96	Danville, VA
S. Florence Richman '99	Potomac, MD
Donna L. Simpson '99 & '02	Virginia Beach, VA
Joseph O. Sutliff '85	Vinton, VA
Grace W. Taylor '54	Clarksville, VA
Pamela L. Taylor '96 & '99	Aylett, VA
Judy E. Thomas '98 & '01	Petersburg, VA
Barrett L. Trimble '00	Centreville, VA
Henry W. Trimble '00	Centreville, VA
Alfred O. Upton '79	Powhatan, VA
Steven Valladares '89	Lewisville, NC
Venda S. Whitney '48	High Point, NC
Addie D. Wilkerson '46	Eden, NC
Gayle L. Wyatt '65	Danville, VA

Averett University

- [Introducing Averett](#)
- [Admissions](#)
- [Academic Programs](#)
- [Degree Programs](#)
- [Student Life](#)
- [Financial Information](#)
- [Directory of Personnel](#)
- [University Calendar](#)
- [Catalog Index](#)

- [> Board of Trustees](#)
- [> Faculty](#)

- [> Administrative Offices](#)
- [> Alumni Association](#)
- [> **Information Directory**](#)

INFORMATION DIRECTORY

<p>Admissions</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Campus Visitations Interviews with Prospective Students</p> <p>Academic Records</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Grades Graduation Requirements Registration Transcripts Transfer Credits Veteran Affairs</p> <p>Academic Advising</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Academic Discipline Student Academic Concerns Freshman Interdisciplinary Program Faculty Class Schedules</p> <p>Alumni and Parent Relations</p> <p>Athletics</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Men's and Women's Intercollegiate Teams</p> <p>Contributions</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Annual Giving Gifts</p> <p>Faculty Development</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Employment Evaluation Promotion Tenure Curriculum Development and Assessment</p> <p>Financial Affairs</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Tuition and Fees Insurance Facilities Security Mailroom Bookstore</p> <p>Financial Aid</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Loans Scholarships</p> <p>Graduate and Professional Studies</p> <p>Information Technology</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Computer Center</p> <p>Internet Services</p> <p>Library</p> <p>Student Life</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Career Services Counseling Services</p>	<p>Dean of Admissions</p> <p>Registrar</p> <p>Dean of Arts and Sciences</p> <p>Director of Alumni and Parent Relations</p> <p>Athletic Director</p> <p>Vice President for Institutional Advancement</p> <p>Dean of Arts and Sciences</p> <p>Vice President for Administration and Finance</p> <p>Dean of Financial Assistance</p> <p>Dean of Graduate and Professional Studies</p> <p>Director of Information Technology</p> <p>Director of Library</p> <p>Dean of Student Development</p>
---	--

Residence Life
Student Activities

Averett University

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

UNDERGRADUATE COLLEGE CALENDAR

FALL SEMESTER	2004-2005	2005-2006 (tentative)
Faculty Workshop	August 19	August 18
Registration	August 23	August 22
Classes Begin	August 25	August 24
Senior Pinning	September 13	September 12
Convocation	August 26	September 13
Family Weekend	September 17	October 7
Fall Break	October 13, 14, 15	October 12, 13, 14
Classes Resume	October 18	October 17
Last Day to Apply for Fall Graduation	November 12	November 11
Homecoming	November 12	October 28
Thanksgiving Break	November 24, 25, 26	November 23, 24, 25
Classes Resume	November 29	November 28
*Reading Day	December 2	December 1
Exams	December 3, 6, 7, 8	December 2, 5, 6, 7
Senior Grades Due 9:00 a.m.	December 9	December 8
Graduation	December 11	December 10
Fall Grades Due	December 14	December 13

SPRING SEMESTER

Registration	January 7	January 6
Classes Begin	January 11	January 10
Founders Day	January 20	January 19
*Interdisciplinary Day	February 11	February 10
Spring Break	March 7 - 11	March 6 - 10
Classes Resume	March 14	March 13
*Good Friday	March 25	April 14
Last Day to Apply for Spring Graduation	April 1	March 31
*Reading Day	April 21	April 20
Exams	April 22, 25, 26, 27	April 21, 24, 25, 26
Senior Grades Due 9:00 a.m.	April 28	April 27
Graduation	April 30	April 29
Spring Grades Due	May 3	May 2

*No Classes

SUMMER SESSIONS

First Term	(2005) * May 16 – June 10	(2006) * May 15 – June 9
Second Term	(2005) ** June 13 – July 8	(2006) ** June 12 – July 7
	* No classes May 30	* No classes May 29
	** No classes July 4	** No classes July 4

[Introducing Averett](#)

[Admissions](#)

[Academic Programs](#)

[Degree Programs](#)

[Student Life](#)

[Financial Information](#)

[Directory of Personnel](#)

[University Calendar](#)

[Catalog Index](#)

> [Catalog Index](#)

> [Information Directory](#)

CATALOG INDEX

[|A|](#)[|B|](#)[|C|](#)[|D|](#)[|E|](#)[|F|](#)[|G|](#)[|H|](#)[|I|](#)[|J|](#)[|K|](#)[|L|](#)[|M|](#)[|N|](#)[|O|](#)[|P|](#)[|Q|](#)[|R|](#)[|S|](#)[|T|](#)[|U|](#)[|V|](#)[|W|](#)[|X|](#)[|Y|](#)[|Z|](#)

A

- [Academic Honors](#)
- [Academic Program](#)
 - [Degrees Offered](#)
 - [Graduation Requirements](#)
- [Academic Renewal](#)
- [Acceptance](#)
- [Accounting](#)
- [Accreditation](#)
- [Adding/Dropping a Course](#)
- [Admission](#)
 - [Accelerated](#)
 - [Readmission](#)
- [Adult Degree Program \(see IDEAL\)](#)
- [Advanced Placement](#)
- [Advising](#)
 - [Academic](#)
- [Aeronautics](#)
- [Aerospace Management](#)
- [Aerospace Management/ Criminal Justice](#)
- [Alumni Association](#)
- [Art](#)
- [Athletics](#)
- [Attendance and Absences](#)

B

- [Basic Degree Requirements](#)
 - [Associate of Arts](#)
 - [Associate of Science](#)
 - [Bachelor of Arts](#)
 - [Bachelor of Applied Science](#)
 - [Bachelor of Science](#)
- [Biology](#)
- [Biology/Chemistry](#)
- [Biology: Radiologic Technology](#)
- [Bookstore](#)
- [Business Administration](#)

C

- [Calendar](#)
- [Campus](#)
- [Campus Visits](#)
- [Career Planning and Placement Office](#)
- [Chemistry](#)
- [Chemistry/Biology](#)
- [Church Ministries](#)
- [Class Attendance](#)
- [Classification of Students](#)
- [CLEP](#)
- [Clubs, Student](#)

Commuter Students
Computer Information Systems
Computer Science
Counseling
Course Changes
Course Load
Course Repeats
Credit by Examination
Criminal Justice

D

Dean's List
Declaration of Major
Degrees
Degree Programs
Degree Requirements
Degree-Seeking Status
Diploma Application
Directed Teaching
Direct Transfer Agreement
Dropping/Adding a Course
Dual Enrollment

E

Economics
Education
 Elementary (Liberal Studies)
 Secondary
English
English/History (Pre-Law)
English/Theatre
Environmental Sciences
Equestrian Studies
Evaluation of Academic Work

F

Faculty
Fees
Finance
Financial Assistance
Financial Information
Financial Policy
Food Services
French

G

General Education Requirements
General Regulations
Global Marketing Management
Grade Appeal
Grading System
Graduate and Professional Studies
Graduate Education Programs
Graduation Application
Graduation Requirements
Greek

H

Health
Hebrew
History

History and Politics
History of Averett University
Honor Code
Honors Program
Honor Societies
Honors, Academic

I

I-20 Form
IDEAL
Independent Study
Information Directory
Information Technology (see computer science)
Intercollegiate Athletics
Interdisciplinary Studies
International Baccalaureate Diploma
International Students
International Study Opportunities

J

Journalism

K

L

Language
 French
 Greek
 Hebrew
 Spanish
Leadership Studies
Leave of Absence
Liberal Studies With Teaching License
Library
Loans and Scholarships
Location of the University

M

Major, Formal Declaration
Management Science
Mathematics
Mathematical Decision Science
Medical Technology
Military Credit
Minor, Formal Declaration
Ministerial Tuition Discounts
Mission Statement
Motor Vehicles
Music
 Auditions

N

Non-Collegiate
 Learning Experiences
Non-Traditional Study
Notification of Acceptance

O

Off-Campus Learning Opportunities
Organizations, Student

P

- Parking
- Pass/Fail Option
- Peer Tutoring
- Personnel Directory
- Philosophy
- Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science
 - Athletic Training Program
 - Golf Management
 - Health, Physical Education and Drivers Education with Teaching License
 - Physical Education Sports Management Wellness/Sports Medicine
- Physical Science
- Placement Tests
 - English
 - French
 - Mathematics
 - Spanish
- Political Science
- Pre-Law (see English/History)
- Pre-Professional Studies
- President's List
- Probation, Academic
- Proficiency Requirements
- Psychology
- Publications, Student

Q

- Quality Points

R

- Radiologic Technology
- Readmission
- Refunds
- Registration for Classes
- Religion
- Religious Life
- Repeating Courses
- Residence Halls
- Residence Requirements
- Resident Students
- Rules and Regulations
 - Academic
 - General
 - Attendance and Absences
 - Residence Halls
 - Health

S

- Scholarship Assistance
- Scholarships: Honors Students
- Second Baccalaureate Degree
- Secondary Education
- Senior Citizen Discount
- Senior College Credits
- Social and Cultural Life
- Sociology
- Sociology/Criminal Justice
- Spanish
- Special Students
- Special Studies
- Speech (See Theatre)

Student Government Association
Student Life
Student Loans
Student Organizations
Student Services
Summer Sessions
Supplemental Fees
Suspension, Academic

T
Teacher Licensure
Theatre
Transcripts
Transfer Applications
Transfer Credits
Tuition and Fees (See Financial Information)
Tutorials
Tutoring Services

U
Undergraduate Admission

V
Visitors

W
Warning, Academic
Wellness/Fitness Center
Withdrawal from a Course
Withdrawal from University
Work-Study Program

X

Y

Z